

CONTENTS

<p>Unit 1 1-6</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Grammar Revision</p> <p>Unit 2 7-11</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">PRESENT TENSES Simple Present Present Continuous Non-progressive verbs</p> <p>Unit 3 12-17</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">FUTURE TENSES</p> <p>Unit 4 18-21</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">PAST TENSES Simple Past Past Continuous</p> <p>Unit 5 22-31</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">PERFECT TENSES Present Perfect Present Perfect Continuous Past Perfect Past Perfect Continuous</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">REVISION TEST 1</p> <p>Unit 6 34-38</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Simple and Perfect Modals</p> <p>Unit 7 39-41</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Present and past participles as adjectives</p> <p>Unit 8 42-45</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Adjective and adverb structures <i>too/enough</i> <i>so that/such that</i></p> <p>Unit 9 46-53</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Gerunds and Infinitives Infinitive with or without "to" Infinitive after adjectives Gerund after prepositions</p> <p>Unit 10 54-59</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Causatives</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">REVISION TEST 2 TEST YOUR VOCABULARY</p>	<p>Unit 11 65-69</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Relative Clauses (defining) that/which/who/whose/where Contact clauses</p> <p>Unit 12 70-76</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Relative Clauses (Non-defining)</p> <p>Unit 13 77-83</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Noun Clauses (as objects)</p> <p>Unit 14 84-90</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Conditionals (Type 1-2-3) Wish Clauses (I wish/If only)</p> <p>Unit 15 91-94</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Connectors and Conjunctions but, and, or, so, because, after, before, etc.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">REVISION TEST 3</p> <p>Unit 16 97-101</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Prepositional Phrases on time, in a hurry, by mistake, etc. Phrasal Verbs</p> <p>Unit 17 102-111</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Vocabulary Building</p> <p>Unit 18 112-117</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Synonyms and Antonyms Prefixes of Negation (un-, dis-, in-, im-, il-, ir-) Negatives with -less</p> <p>Unit 19 118-121</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Confusing Verbs Confusing Word Pairs</p> <p>Unit 20</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">REVISION TEST 4 122-127</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">QUIZ 1 QUIZ 2 QUIZ 3 QUIZ 4</p>
--	---

UNIT 1

REVISION

1 Choose the correct answers given in parentheses to complete the sentences.

- 1- You should brush (*your/yours*) teeth before you (*go/went*) to bed.
- 2- You (*don't have to/mustn't*) cross the street when the lights (*are/will be*) red.
- 3- I needn't help (*he/him*) put on (*his/him*) clothes; he can get dressed by (*him/himself*).
- 4- We bought this house (*since/in*) 1990, so we've had it (*since/for*) seven years.
- 5- Mike (*has been writing/has written*) letters since the morning, and so far, he (*has been writing/has written*) three letters.
- 6- Can you lend (*myself/me*) (*your/yourself*) dictionary? I've left (*my/mine*) at home.
- 7- (*Did/Do*) you manage to get to the bank (*if/before*) it closed?
- 8- We (*lost/have lost*) yesterday's match because (*some/one*) of our best (*player/players*) was ill.
- 9- My bike was (*stealing/stolen*) when I left it (*outside/throughout*) a shop for a (*little/few*) minutes.
- 10- The journey (*wasn't/didn't*) take long, so we (*weren't/didn't*) very tired afterwards.
- 11- **A:** (*How long/How much*) do the tickets cost?
B: I have no idea. (*Why don't/Let's*) ask Jenny. She might know.
- 12- **A:** (*Which/What*) is your favourite, tea or coffee?
B: I like coffee (*better/best*) than tea.
- 13- Mr Arnold is usually very (*rudely/rude*) to the customers. He should treat them (*politer/more politely*).
- 14- **A:** I'm making (*yourself/myself*) a sandwich. (*Would you rather/Would you like*) one?
B: Oh yes, but please don't put any mustard in (*myself/mine*).
- 15- **A:** Oh, I have (*the/a*) terrible headache.
B: Wait there, and (*I'm going to/I'll*) bring you (*a/an*) aspirin.
- 16- **A:** There aren't any apples for me to make a pie with, (*am I/are there*)?
B: I'm afraid (*so/not*). We ate (*they/them*) all (*last/yesterday*) night.
- 17- You are making (*too much/too many*) spelling mistakes. You (*must/might*) take more care.
- 18- My niece is coming over from Germany (*for/during*) a month (*last/this*) summer. I'm looking forward (*to see/to seeing*) (*him/her*) again after so many years.
- 19- We have to go and do (*some/any*) shopping right away. There's (*anything/nothing*) to eat at home.
- 20- **A:** Look at that strange man (*stand/standing*) in the corner. I don't think I've seen him here (*before/ago*).
B: Oh, that (*can be/must be*) the new librarian.
- 21- Some of the students (*haven't/hadn't*) finished answering the questions when the bell (*rang/rings*).
- 22- Mrs Smith (*fainted/was fainting*) when she (*received/was receiving*) the bad news.
- 23- **A:** (*Which/What*) is an igloo?
B: It's a house (*where/which*) is made of ice.
- 24- We (*have left/will leave*) for the theatre as soon as Dad (*arrives/arrived*).
- 25- What (*did/would*) you do first if you (*were/would be*) the Prime Minister?
- 26- You shouldn't be absent from classes (*unless/if*) you are really ill.
- 27- My grandfather (*has operated/was operated*) on by a very famous doctor.
- 28- There are two films on TV tonight, one is science fiction and (*another/the other*) is a detective story. The TV guide says that (*both/all*) of them are (*good/well*), (*because/so*) I can't decide (*what/which*) one to watch.

2

Choose the correct completion given in parentheses.

- 1- (Mine/My) parents never allow (me/I) to go to bed later than 10 o'clock.
- 2- (No one/Anyone) helped Mum with the cleaning after the party. She did it all (hers/herself).
- 3- Let's not invite Margaret to the party. She and I don't like (ourselves/each other), you know.
- 4- There (isn't/aren't) (much/any) pears at home. Can you get (any/some) when you go to the shops?
- 5- Who is that girl walking towards (us/we)? Do you know (him/her)?
- 6- A: (Will/Have) you (see/seen) my dictionary? I can't find it (anywhere/nowhere).
- B: Well, it must be (everywhere/somewhere) in your room.
- 7- A: (Whose/What) bike is that?
B: It's my (brother/brother's).
- 8- A: What's the word in English for the place (which/where) meat (has sold/is sold)?
B: (Didn't/Haven't) you (asked/ask) me the same question just ten minutes ago?
- 9- A: Which team (did win/won) yesterday's match?
B: (None/Neither). It (has been/was) a draw — 2-2.
- 10- Very high up in the mountains there is (little/few) oxygen, (or/so) it is difficult to breathe.

3

a) Complete the passage using the words in the box. Use each word only once.



a	another	from	in	as	no
when	which	the oldest	them	its	began
	take	still	ago	long	

Honey is (1) _____ of all sugars known to man. It's (2) _____ natural sugar (3) _____ is made by bees, and it's the same today (4) _____ it was centuries (5) _____. Wild honey was collected in the forests near the clearings of the earliest prehistoric farmers. (6) _____ recorded history (7) _____, the ancient Egyptians were already making alcoholic drinks with honey. People (8) _____ many parts of the world (9) _____ regard it as one of the most delicious foods.

Honey is one of the easiest foods to digest. The sugar in it is different (10) _____ the sugar in sugarcane. It's easier for the body to use. Honey is also smooth on the throat. It is a part of many commercial cough syrups.

Honey keeps fresh for a (11) _____ period of time. It keeps for years without sterilization of any kind. However, it must be kept sealed, or the honey absorbs moisture from the air and may ferment. Bakers (12) _____ advantage of the honey's ability to absorb moisture. Baked foods with honey in (13) _____ keep fresh longer.

(14) _____ unusual quality of honey is (15) _____ ability to destroy bacteria. (16) _____ disease of man has ever been linked to honey.

b) Say whether these statements are True or False.

- 1- Because of its smoothness, honey is suitable for use in cough medicine.
- 2- Honey has been found to be the cause of certain diseases in man's history.
- 3- It's not possible to store honey for a long time.
- 4- Honey has the ability to kill bacteria.
- 5- Bakers avoid using honey in their goods because it causes them to go off quickly.
- 6- Bees have always produced honey in the same way.
- 7- Using the sugar in sugarcane is not as easy for the body as using the sugar in honey.
- 8- Ancient Egyptians used to get honey from alcoholic drinks.

4

Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The sun _____ today, but it is cold.
 A) shines B) shone
 C) is shining D) was shining
- 2- An island is an area of land _____ is surrounded by water.
 A) where B) which
 C) who D) what
- 3- If you don't sleep _____ during the night, you'll be tired the next day.
 A) good B) best
 C) better D) well
- 4- Gypsies don't like living in one place; they prefer to travel _____ one place _____ another.
 A) from ... to B) between ... with
 C) in ... for D) for ... until
- 5- Fortunately, the fire in the hotel _____ by a waitress before it became too big.
 A) was noticing
 B) had noticed
 C) has been noticed
 D) was noticed
- 6- Don't make any noise. Your sister _____ for an important exam.
 A) has been studied
 B) is studying
 C) had studied
 D) was studying
- 7- I was eating dinner _____ the guests arrived.
 A) after B) as soon as
 C) because D) when
- 8- Sally is old enough to look after herself. You _____ worry about her.
 A) wouldn't B) needn't
 C) can't D) may not
- 9- He _____ be late for work any more, or he'll lose his job.
 A) shouldn't B) couldn't
 C) needn't D) mightn't
- 10- I felt terrified yesterday _____ there was a power failure _____ I was in the lift.
 A) after/but B) when/while
 C) because/before D) if/unless
- 11- As far as I can remember, the meeting started _____ Wednesday afternoon and finished _____ the evening.
 A) in/for B) from/until
 C) at/on D) on/in
- 12- Do you know a shop _____ they sell second-hand furniture?
 A) that B) which
 C) where D) who
- 13- Let's go _____ a swim _____ the river tomorrow afternoon.
 A) to/on B) into/along
 C) for/in D) from/across
- 14- _____ snow covered the ground like _____ white carpet.
 A) The/a B) A/the
 C) —/any D) Some/—
- 15- A: Shall we go to see the film "Eşkiya"?
 B: Not a good idea! I've _____ seen it.
 A) still B) already
 C) yet D) no longer

16- So far this summer, I _____ in the sea only once.

- A) am swimming
- B) swim
- C) was swimming
- D) have swum

17- I last met Sarah _____ February. I haven't seen her _____ then.

- A) since/for
- B) in/since
- C) on/from
- D) towards/before

18- A: Oh! You've got a cat. _____ have you had it?

B: _____ last year.

- A) When/In
- B) Where/For
- C) How long/Since
- D) Who/During

19- I missed my usual bus to work yesterday, but I _____ to work on time by taking taxi.

- A) was able to get
- B) had to get
- C) should get
- D) must get

20- Our boss _____ to the USA a few days ago, and _____ yet.

- A) was going/didn't return
- B) has gone/isn't returning
- C) is going/hadn't returned
- D) went/hasn't returned

21- There weren't many people in the queue, _____ we didn't have to wait long to get our theatre tickets.

- A) because
- B) before
- C) so
- D) but

22- Sally _____ since she had that terrible accident two months ago.

- A) didn't have to walk
- B) hasn't been able to walk
- C) won't have to walk
- D) can't walk

23- A: Waiter, could _____ bring _____ the bill, please?

B: Certainly, Madam.

- A) I/you
- B) he/ours
- C) yourself/your
- D) you/us

24- I asked Lucy _____ to get a free ticket to the concert.

- A) when does she manage
- B) that she had managed
- C) how she managed
- D) what time will she manage

25- Have you decided what _____ your sister for her wedding?

- A) to buy
- B) buying
- C) to buying
- D) buy

26- Jack never goes to zoos because, he says, he can't stand _____ animals in captivity.

- A) to see
- B) seeing
- C) see
- D) have seen

27- You've been working for that company for two years, _____?

- A) are you
- B) do you
- C) haven't you
- D) didn't you

28- A: I'll never forgive Sue for lying to us about the arrangement.

B: No, _____.

- A) I won't either
- B) nor am I
- C) don't you
- D) will you

29- Fortunately, today's exam wasn't _____ the previous one, so I think I made very few mistakes.

- A) the most difficult
- B) very difficult
- C) difficult enough for
- D) as difficult as

30- A: Of the Turkish pop singers, who do you think is _____?

B: Well, it's difficult to choose one.

- A) more successful
- B) the most successful
- C) as successfully
- D) successfully enough

5

- a) Fill in the blanks with suitable words. Write only one word in each blank. Sometimes more than one answer is possible. (Contracted negatives like *don't*, *etc.* count as one word.)

It was Monday morning, and Mr Butler, (1) _____ owner of (2) _____ small antique shop, was alone (3) _____ his shop (4) _____ in an armchair by the open fire. Soon the (5) _____ rang, and Mr Butler got up from his chair and went to (6) _____ who had come. It was a boy of about fifteen. (7) _____ his arm, he had a brown paper parcel, which he began to open. "Hello. You're Mr Butler, (8) _____, you?" he said, looking a little excited. "Yes, that's right, and what (9) _____ I do for you, young man?" asked Mr Butler. (10) _____ boy showed Mr Butler a picture in (11) _____ old frame (12) _____ some boats on the sea. Mr Butler had never been more surprised in all (13) _____ life. "We're selling our old house and (14) _____ into a new one, you see," the boy (15) _____ him, "and we've got an awful lot of rubbish — like this picture. Dad found (16) _____ in the attic yesterday, and he thought perhaps the frame was worth a few pounds." Mr Butler was not (17) _____ to what the boy was saying. He was (18) _____ looking (19) _____ the picture. "Well, yes," he said at (20) _____. "I mean — well, no, I (21) _____ usually buy things like picture frames, especially old (22) _____ like this." It was the (23) _____ fantastic thing that had ever happened to him. He'd seen at (24) _____ that the awful old picture was not rubbish at all — it was an original Turner! Yes, an original Turner, he knew it. It was difficult (25) _____ Mr Butler to keep calm. But he knew he (26) _____ to. The frame was certainly not worth (27) _____ than a pound or two, but the picture — he could make a fortune out of the picture! Only if he kept quiet, (28) _____ course, only if he was very careful. The important thing now was to stay (29) _____, and to try (30) _____ to show the boy how excited he was. He took the picture (31) _____ the boy for a moment. "It probably won't be (32) _____ difficult for me to find a customer for it. Ten pounds?" "Ten pounds? But that's great!" The boy (33) _____ expected so much. "Thanks very much, Mr Butler," he said, excitedly. Mr Butler invited the boy to sit (34) _____ near the fire for a moment while he went upstairs (35) _____ fetch the money. When he came down a few minutes (36) _____, he noticed that (37) _____ was a strange smell in the room, and that the fire was (38) _____ more brightly (39) _____ before. "Here you are, Mr Butler," said the boy, and handed him the old frame. "I took the picture out and threw it in the fire. I knew you (40) _____ wanted the frame."

b) Answer the questions.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>1- What was Mr Butler doing when the boy arrived?
<i>He was sitting in an armchair by the fire.</i></p> <p>2- Why did the boy come to see Mr Butler?</p> <p>3- Why did the boy want to get rid of the picture?</p> <p>4- Was the old picture rubbish?</p> <p>5- Why wasn't it easy for Mr Butler to keep calm?</p> <p>6- Why was the boy surprised at the price?</p> <p>7- What did the boy do while Mr Butler was upstairs?</p> | <p>8- Why did he do that?</p> <p>9- What do you think Mr Butler did after that? Choose one of the following and state your reason.
— <i>He gave him the money because ...</i>
— <i>He didn't give him the money because ...</i>
— <i>He threw the boy out of his shop because ...</i>
— <i>He began to cry because ...</i></p> <p>10- How would you react if you were Mr Butler?</p> <p>11- Which of the following would be a suitable title for the passage?
<i>a) Moving into a New House</i>
<i>b) A Treasure Turning into Ashes</i>
<i>c) A Cunning Little Boy</i></p> |
|---|--|

6

Complete the sentences using the prepositions in the box.

about of to for on with at

- 1- Towards the end, some students seemed bored _____ the lesson.
- 2- Mary is hopeless _____ cooking — she can't even boil an egg!
- 3- When they were promised a day out on Sunday, the children were filled _____ happiness.
- 4- The factory is working at a low capacity because they are short _____ raw material.
- 5- Sally is very eager _____ success, so she works hard day and night.
- 6- I want to buy a blouse similar _____ yours.
- 7- I'm not very keen _____ fish, but I eat it anyway because it is necessary for a balanced diet.
- 8- George hasn't found a job yet, so he is still economically dependent _____ his parents.
- 9- Mrs Thompson is really anxious _____ her son. It's past midnight and he still hasn't come home.
- 10- The Aegean region is famous _____ its grapes and cotton.

7

Study the phrasal verbs in the list and their meanings and then complete the sentences with the correct phrasal verb. Pay attention to the verb form.

continue = *go on* explode = *go off* sink = *go down* resemble = *take after*
 die = *pass away* delay = *put off* arrive = *turn up* leave the ground = *take off*
 run towards = *make for* begin a journey = *set out*

- 1- The family are grieving because the father, Mr Smith, _____ yesterday after an illness of nine months.
- 2- I have an appointment in New York, so I _____ as soon as this meeting is over.
- 3- Tim _____ his mother's father.
- 4- If you _____ going to the doctor much longer, you'll never get better.
- 5- When they finally _____ to say goodbye, my father's plane had already _____.
- 6- The small boat capsized in the storm and soon _____.
- 7- When the bomb _____ in the street, everybody _____ the nearest shelter.

JUST FOR FUN

Scottish Jokes

Mr McTavish: Taxi! Taxi!
Taxi driver: Where to, Sir?
Mr McTavish: How much is it to King Street?
Taxi driver: About £1.50, Sir.
Mr McTavish: How much is it for the child?
Taxi driver: Oh, it's nothing for him, Sir.
Mr McTavish: Well, then drive him to 38, King Street. I'll walk.

A young reporter visited an old Scotsman on his 98th birthday. He took a photo of him for his newspaper. Then he said, "I hope I can take another photo of you when you're a hundred." "Why not?" answered the old Scot. "You're a fine healthy boy!"

UNIT 2

REVISION OF TENSES

Simple Present or Present Continuous

- a) Use the **present continuous** to express actions that are happening at the time of speaking, and the **simple present** to talk about habits and general activities.

Every day at 9.30, Mr Harris **has** a meeting with his secretary. (*general*)
It's 9.30 now, and Mr Harris **is having** a meeting with his secretary. (*at the moment*)

- b) Use the **present continuous** to express changing situations.

Unemployment **is getting** worse with each day.
Your English **is improving**.

- c) The **present continuous** can be used to express future plans.

A: What **are** you **doing** tomorrow, Jack?
B: Oh, I'm **meeting** my friends and **going** to the cinema.

You can use the **simple present** with a future meaning when you are talking about schedules, timetables, etc.

A: When **does** your plane **take** off?
B: At 10.30, but I have to be at the airport an hour before that.

- d) Use the **simple present** with the verbs "live" and "work" when you are talking about one's permanent residence and work, but use the **present continuous** to express temporary ones.

A: Where **does** your father **work**?
B: He **works** as an accountant for a big company.

Sally **is working** as a waitress at the moment, but she'll quit it when she finds a better job.

- e) Some verbs do not express an action. They express a state. These verbs are not generally used with the continuous tenses even if they are used to express a state that exists at the time of speaking.

As soon as I get up in the morning, I **want** a cup of coffee. (*general*)
No, thanks. I **don't want** a coffee now. (*at the moment*)

NON-PROGRESSIVE VERBS

Verbs expressing mental state

<i>think*</i>	<i>notice</i>	<i>remember</i>	<i>want</i>
<i>suppose</i>	<i>recognise</i>	<i>forget</i>	<i>need</i>
<i>believe</i>	<i>realise</i>	<i>understand</i>	<i>prefer</i>
<i>imagine</i>	<i>know</i>	<i>doubt</i>	<i>mean</i>

Verbs expressing emotions

<i>love</i>	<i>like</i>	<i>fear</i>	<i>care</i>
<i>hate</i>	<i>dislike</i>	<i>envy</i>	<i>mind</i>

Verbs expressing possession

<i>have*</i>	<i>own</i>	<i>possess</i>	<i>belong (to)</i>
--------------	------------	----------------	--------------------

Verbs of Perception

<i>see*</i>	<i>smell*</i>	<i>taste*</i>	<i>feel*</i>	<i>hear</i>
-------------	---------------	---------------	--------------	-------------

Others

<i>look*</i>	<i>appear*</i>	<i>weigh</i>	<i>advise</i>	<i>include</i>
<i>seem</i>	<i>sound</i>	<i>cost</i>	<i>promise</i>	<i>contain</i>

Verbs with an asterisk can be used with the continuous tenses, usually with a different meaning.

Is something wrong with Kate? She **looks** very sad. (*look* expresses a state)
 Why **are** you **looking** at me like that? (*look* expresses a deliberate action happening at the time of speaking)

What perfume do you use? It **smells** very nice. (*state*)
 Look. Grandma **is smelling** the flowers we gave her. (*action*)

I **have** a son, but I **don't have** a daughter. (*state*)
 Mum can't come to the phone. She **is having** a bath. (*action*)

1

Complete the sentences choosing from the non-progressive verbs in the table above. There may be more than one answer for some of them.

- 1- I'm not comfortable on this chair. It _____ very hard.
- 2- Do you _____ who that man over there is?
- 3- Well, your holiday plan _____ interesting, but where will you get that much money from?
- 4- I _____ that piece of land _____ to the Roberts, but I'm not certain.
- 5- Elderly people should avoid eating eggs too often because they _____ cholesterol, which is bad for them.
- 6- The strawberries _____ nice but they _____ rather sour.
- 7- Do you _____ in ghosts?
- 8- That child is very clever. He _____ everything very easily.

2

Choose the correct completion given in parentheses.

- 1- Dad, I (*am needing/need*) some money for tomorrow's school trip.
- 2- Mm! This curry (*tastes/is tasting*) delicious! Did you make it yourself?
- 3- **A:** Hi, Jack. (*Are/Do*) you (*have/having*) a good time?
B: Yes, but unfortunately, I (*have to/am having to*) leave soon.
- 4- **A:** Jim, I (*pack/am packing*) your suitcase. Shall I put in your yellow tie?
B: Oh, no! I (*am hating/hate*) it, but I (*am wanting/want*) to take my green one.
- 5- **A:** Where is Mum?
B: She (*works/is working*) in the back garden.
- 6- Don't let anyone into the surgery. The doctor (*is seeing/sees*) one of his patients.
- 7- Our English teacher has given us a text to read, but I can't understand it — it (*contains/is containing*) lots of difficult words.
- 8- **A:** Is your brother still unemployed?
B: No, he (*works/is working*) in my uncle's office for the time being, but he (*looks/is looking*) for a job in his own field.
- 9- Sandra's mother is a scientist. She (*works/is working*) at a university hospital in the city centre.
- 10- We (*are living/live*) in a flat big enough for us and our children, but at the moment, my husband's niece (*is living/lives*) with us, so we are short of space.
- 11- (*Do/Are*) you (remember/remembering) his name? I (*think/am thinking*) that it (*is starting/starts*) with a K.
- 12- My favourite group (*plays/is playing*) at the Town Hall tonight. Everyone (*is going/goes*). (*Are/Do*) you (*want/wanting*) to come with us?

3

Decide whether the verbs in parentheses express an action or a state and complete the sentences with the simple present or present continuous form of the verbs.

- 1- People usually think she is ill because she _____ (*look*) very pale.
- 2- My grandmother _____ (*have*) a big house with a nice garden.
- 3- **A:** _____ the bill _____ (*include*) service?
B: Yes, Sir.
- 4- **A:** Sam, what _____ you _____ (*do*) here in the kitchen? Aren't you on a diet?
B: Well, I _____ (*not, actually, eat*). I _____ (*just, taste*) the cake.
- 5- **A:** _____ you _____ (*know*) what this word _____ (*mean*)?
B: I'm afraid not. Why _____ you _____ (*not, ask*) Mum? She _____ (*know*) quite a lot about economic terms.
- 6- **A:** Jeremy _____ (*spend*) his next holiday on a desert island in the Indian Ocean.
B: It _____ (*sound*) very interesting but also a little frightening.
- 7- Maria _____ (*think*) that her English is better than ours, but it's just the same.
- 8- **A:** How much _____ you _____ (*think*) Margo _____ (*weigh*)?
B: Well, she _____ (*say*) 55 kg but I _____ (*not, believe*) her.
- 9- **A:** How _____ your mother _____ (*feel*) today?
B: She is much better.
- 10- I _____ (*feel*) that something bad will happen during the meeting.
- 11- Who _____ this purse _____ (*belong*) to? If no one _____ (*claim*) it, I _____ (*take*) it to the police station this afternoon.
- 12- **A:** Why _____ Dave _____ (*crawl*) around on the floor?
B: He dropped some money, so he _____ (*look*) for it.

4

Complete the sentences using the *simple present* or *present continuous* of the verbs in the list.

go	eat	enjoy	hide
take after	have	advise	organise
buy	take	decorate	smell

- 1- She _____ her mother both in appearance and personality.
- 2- **A:** Where is Alison?
B: She _____ the dog for a walk. She'll be back in twenty minutes.
- 3- That food _____ wonderful. What is it?
- 4- We _____ a small party next week. Would you like to come?
- 5- The secretary _____ the trip, so she can give you all the information about it.
- 6- The children _____ in their bedroom at the moment because they think I'm angry with them.
- 7- I _____ you to go by train because it's much faster than the bus.
- 8- We _____ the living room at the moment and next week, we'll do the bedrooms.
- 9- I _____ watching films at the cinema much more than on television.
- 10- You _____ too much! That's why you're fat.
- 11- I _____ out at six, so don't forget to take your keys with you.
- 12- Usually, I _____ everything at the supermarket because it's much more convenient than going to the market.

5

Complete the sentences using the *simple present* or *present continuous* of the verbs in the list.

arrive	argue	interview	fly
help	water	give	celebrate
laugh	send	sneeze	play

- 1- **A:** What _____ you _____ Lorna for her birthday?
B: A pair of earrings. I bought them yesterday.
- 2- The train _____ in Ankara at half past eleven.
- 3- My grandparents _____ their fiftieth wedding anniversary with a big party at a luxury hotel.
- 4- Every Christmas, people in many parts of the world _____ hundreds of cards to all their friends and relatives.
- 5- **A:** Why _____ you _____?
B: Oh, Peter just told us a really funny story.
- 6- I'm sorry. You can't see the manager right now. She _____ an applicant for the new post.
- 7- My brother always _____ me with my chemistry homework because he is much better at it than me.
- 8- Mr Edwards _____ to Miami this morning for a conference.
- 9- My husband's favourite game is backgammon, so he _____ it whenever he can.
- 10- Poor Jenny _____ every time there are flowers in the house because she is allergic to them.
- 11- They're really good friends, but they _____ all the time.
- 12- **A:** Why _____ you _____ the garden? It'll probably rain tonight.
B: Oh, you can never believe the weather forecast!

6

Complete the sentences using the *simple present* or *present continuous* of the verbs in parentheses. Pay attention to whether the verb is *active* or *passive*.

- 1- **A:** Your shopping _____ (cost) £25 altogether, Madam.
B: _____ that _____ (include) VAT?
A: Yes, Madam.
- 2- **A:** What _____ "peninsula" _____ (mean)?
B: A piece of land which _____ (almost, surround) by water but _____ (attach) to the mainland on one side.
- 3- Everything is a mess in our house because a new central heating system _____ (install).
- 4- Our new furniture _____ (deliver) tomorrow afternoon.
- 5- **A:** What _____ all those people _____ (look) at?
B: A salesman _____ (demonstrate) how to use a newly-produced electrical appliance, and the people _____ (watch) him.
- 6- **A:** Listen. Veronica _____ (tell) Mary about her new boyfriend.
B: I _____ (try) hard, but I can't hear a thing.
A: Really? Then, there must be something wrong with your ears!
- 7- **A:** What are you going to do while your office _____ (decorate)?
B: We'll share Tim's office.
- 8- Grapes, which _____ (widely, grow) in the Aegean region, _____ (usually, harvest) in August.
- 9- Prices _____ (increase) so quickly in our country that people _____ (find) it more and more difficult to cope with the cost of living.
- 10- **A:** What time _____ your train _____ (depart)?
B: 9.30 p.m.
A: _____ you _____ (stay) long in Ankara?
B: No, just two days.
- 11- **A:** It _____ (appear) to me that Marcus doesn't support our proposal.
B: I _____ (not, agree). I talked to him a few hours ago, and he seemed all in favour of it.
- 12- **A:** Why _____ those cattle _____ (weigh)?
B: Oh, they've been sold to the slaughter house. That's why Dad and the other men _____ (weigh) them.

7

Complete the following texts using the *simple present* or *present continuous* of the verbs given in the box. You can use some of the verbs more than once.

live work make belong want write go
look have like find give walk

- a) The Morgans are new in town. At the moment, they _____ in a small flat in the centre. But they _____ for a house with a garden in the suburbs. As a film critic, Mr Morgan _____ for newspapers, magazines and TV channels. At present he _____ no regular work, so he _____ a book about the history of film-making. In fact, he is about to finish his book. Next Monday he _____ a press conference.
- b) I'm Samuel Grant. I'm a technician. I _____ in a factory which _____ cameras. I _____ my job, but sometimes I _____ it very tiring. Like most of the other employees, I _____, with my two daughters and my wife, in a flat which _____ to the firm. I usually _____ to work by bus, but this week I _____ to the factory because there is a bus strike. I've been with this firm for over twenty-five years now, and next year I _____ to retire.

UNIT 3

FUTURE FORMS

will or going to

- 1** a) Say which form is used in the following situations — *will, going to, the present continuous with a future meaning* or *the simple present with a future meaning*. More than one use is possible in some of them.

- | | |
|---|-------------|
| a) To express immediate decisions | <u>will</u> |
| b) When you are talking about timetables and schedules | _____ |
| c) To express prior arrangements — or plans | _____ |
| d) When you are expressing your opinion — your expectations, fear, hope, etc. — about future events | _____ |
| e) When making predictions about future events for which there is evidence now | _____ |

- b) Now study the sentences below and decide which definition above goes with each.

- 1- I phoned the plumber today. He **is going to repair** the sink tomorrow. _____
- 2- We're **having** a picnic on Saturday. Would you like to join us? _____
- 3- **A:** Oh, dear! I've spilt coffee over the table.
B: No problem. I'll **bring** a damp cloth and clean it. _____
- 4- **A:** It's only seven now, and the play **starts** at 8.30.
What shall we do until then? _____
B: Let's go to a café and have something to drink.
- 5- My husband has been working very hard recently.
I'm afraid that he'll **make** himself ill. _____
- 6- Look! That child is riding his bike dangerously.
He **is going to crash** somewhere. _____

- c) Write an example for each use of the future forms in the same order as in part (b).

- a) _____
- b) _____
- c) _____
- d) _____
- e) _____
- f) _____

2

Choose a suitable completion for each dialogue from the box, and then complete the second part of the dialogue with the correct future form. There may be more than one answer for some of them.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>1- A: Let's have a game of tennis in the afternoon.
B: _____</p> <p>2- A: Sally has applied for that position in the travel agency.
B: _____</p> <p>3- A: We should find some more volunteers to help us.
B: _____</p> <p>4- A: Shall we take the children to the zoo tomorrow?
B: _____</p> <p>5- A: Isn't it dangerous to travel by road in this weather?
B: _____</p> <p>6- A: Oh, look. The children are blowing up the balloons too much.
B: _____</p> <p>7- A: When is Lucy arriving?
B: _____</p> | <p>a) I talked to Sarah and Dave this morning. They <i>(help)</i> us with the preparations.</p> <p>b) Oh, no! They <i>(burst)</i> them.</p> <p>c) I'm afraid I can't. I <i>(take)</i> my mother to the doctor then.</p> <p>d) It is, actually. I think I <i>(cancel)</i> my coach ticket and <i>(take)</i> the train instead.</p> <p>e) I expect she <i>(get)</i> it. She certainly has the right qualifications.</p> <p>f) Well, her train <i>(depart)</i> at 10 o'clock tonight, so she should be here by 8.00 tomorrow morning.</p> <p>g) Good idea. They <i>(be)</i> very happy when we tell them.</p> |
|---|--|

3

Complete the sentences with a suitable future form using the verbs given in parentheses. There may be more than one answer in some of them.

- 1- **A:** I really want to go to that concert.
B: OK. I _____ *(try)* to get a ticket for you.
- 2- **A:** Sally _____ *(bring)* the twins on holiday with us.
B: Oh, no. I hope they _____ *(not, turn)* our holiday into a nightmare.
- 3- At last, we've taken a democratic decision about where to spend our holiday. We _____ *(stay)* with my parents during the first week, and with his during the second. Then, for the last two weeks, we _____ *(go)* to a summer resort.
- 4- I don't think John _____ *(be)* successful in his final exam. He hasn't done much work for it.
- 5- It's certain that prices _____ *(increase)* after the elections.
- 6- **A:** Oh, dear! It says in the paper that the buses _____ *(be)* on strike tomorrow. How _____ I _____ *(get)* to work then?
B: Don't worry. I _____ *(give)* you a lift.
- 7- **A:** Sarah, have you read the news about the bus strike tomorrow?
B: Yes, Mum, but it's no problem for me. I talked to Dad about it and he _____ *(take)* me to work tomorrow.
- 8- **A:** _____ you _____ *(buy)* John that watch we saw in the window?
B: No, I've changed my mind. I _____ *(get)* him a pair of jeans instead.
- 9- **A:** Your mother bought some material yesterday. _____ she _____ *(make)* a dress?
B: Yes, for me actually.
- 10- There's a parents' meeting in our school tomorrow, so lessons _____ *(finish)* at 12.20 — not at 3.20 as normal.

4

ADVERTISING

Advertising, by its simplest definition, is any method of calling the public's attention to a product or a service without person-to-person selling. It's a form of salesmanship that distributes a selling message to many people at one time, and television is by far the most effective medium for advertising.

In a TV commercial the advertiser is trying to persuade you to go out and buy a particular product. He/She wants to make you feel that you really must have it. To do this, he/she uses a number of different effects. Here are some of them:

1. **The "scientific" effect:** A serious-looking man or woman with glasses and a white coat, possibly a doctor or a professor, tells you about the advantages of the product.
2. **The words-and-music effect:** The name of the product is repeated over and over again, put into a rhyme and sung several times in the hope that you won't forget it.
3. **The VIP (Very Important Person) effect:** Well-known people, like actors/actresses, football players, and so on, are shown using the product.
4. **The "go-go" effect:** This is suitable for the teenage market. It shows young people having a party, singing, laughing, having a wonderful time, and, of course, using the product.
5. **The "ha-ha" effect:** The advertiser tries to make you laugh by showing people or cartoon figures in funny situations.
6. **The "supermodern" effect:** The advertiser tries to persuade you that this product is a fantastic, new breakthrough.
7. **The snob effect:** This tells you that the product is most exclusive and of course rather expensive. Only the elite class use it.
8. **The sex appeal effect:** In this, the product is shown to make women irresistible or more attractive to men, or vice versa.

a) Now talk with your partner about TV commercials you have seen, and decide which of the effects mentioned above they use. Sometimes several effects can be used in the same commercial.

eg: The TV commercial for Yapı Kredi Bank is a good example of the "ha-ha" effect. It shows the manager of another bank in funny situations and makes us laugh.

b) Imagine that you are an advertising agent. Which effect or effects would you use for the following products? Why?

a washing powder

a soft drink

an expensive perfume

a toothpaste

a bank

an airline agency

an electrical appliance

suntan lotion

a new model car

a razor

ice-cream

eg: For the perfume commercial, I would use the snob and the VIP effects. In it I'd show a famous actress or a top model using the perfume, and emphasize that the product is exclusively for certain people.

- c) An advertising agent has prepared catchy slogans for certain products, but now they are all jumbled up. Can you help her match the slogans to the products?

shampoo *washing powder* *perfume* *soap* *a mobile phone*
a car *toothpaste* *moisturiser*

- _____ 1. You'll notice the difference even after one wash. Your whites will be whiter, your coloureds brighter.
- _____ 2. Heads will turn when yours walks past.
- _____ 3. It'll keep you in touch wherever you are.
- _____ 4. So soft. So gentle. You'll think you're washing with moisturising cream.
- _____ 5. Looking forward to the 21st century? Why wait? In our new model, you'll drive into the future today.
- _____ 6. Bad news for dentists. You'll soon be out of work!
- _____ 7. Warning! Don't use this fragrance if you want to go unnoticed. Your life will be hell if you do.
- _____ 8. It'll look after your skin — leaving you free to get on with your life. For the woman too busy to go to a beauty salon.

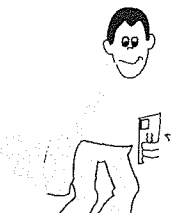
- d) Now work in groups, and prepare your own TV commercial for one of the products or services in section (b). The commercial shouldn't be longer than 30 seconds, (otherwise, it will be too expensive for your client!) Use suitable effects and act the commercial in class. Your friends will tell you how persuasive you are, and whether they'd buy the product/the service or not.

5

Jumbled Dialogue

Mike has got some tickets for a festival, and he's offering to give a few of them to Judy. Put the sentences in the correct order to make the dialogue between Mike and Judy.

- (a) Well, I think I'll get thirsty if I stay that long. Can we get anything to drink there?
- (b) Of course I do. All my friends. They'd be glad to get free tickets.
- (c) Well, the seats aren't reserved. You can sit anywhere you like, so I'd get there early if I were you.
- (d) Why? Have you got some?
- (e) In that case, I'll give you three more. The festival goes on all day, but you can go in and out at any time.
- (f) Good. I needn't bother to carry anything with me then. What about the seats? Can we get somewhere near the stage?
- (g) What a question! You can wear anything, it doesn't matter what. I don't think anybody will be interested in what you're wearing.
- (h) Would you like some tickets for the jazz festival? They're free — you won't have to pay anything.
- (i) Yes, I have. Here — I'll give you two. Perhaps you know somebody else who would like to go.
- (j) Oh yes. There'll be soft drinks — cola, lemonade and things like that.
- (k) That's a good idea. Oh, by the way, what do you think I should put on?



Mike

1. **h**
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____

Judy



6

HOW OPTIMISTIC ARE YOU?

Read the predictions about the world, and Turkey in particular, for the year 2017, twenty years from now. Choose the answer that you agree with most.

1- The economic situation of the country

- a) will be worse than ever
- b) is fine now and will remain fine
- c) will be better, but not everybody will be well-off
- d) will be better than ever before

2- Technology

- a) will cause problems rather than solve them
- b) won't change because it doesn't need to
- c) will improve people's lives, but we'll still need more
- d) will be able to solve all the problems of the world

3- In our cities, pollution

- a) will kill millions of people every year
- b) isn't a problem now, so it won't be in 2017
- c) will still exist, but it'll be more under control
- d) won't be a problem because everyone will be sensitive to the environment

4- A good education will be

- a) impossible to find
- b) available to some people, but not others
- c) available to more citizens than at present
- d) automatically available to all citizens

5- More than 6 million people will take the university entrance exam.

- a) Yes, but there will be only about ten thousand places.
- b) I have no idea!
- c) Probably not so many, but the number of places will be a little higher than now
- d) No. There won't be an exam. Everybody will go to university if they want to.

6- Inflation in our country

- a) will be the highest in the world
- b) will be around ninety per cent
- c) will be a problem from time to time
- d) won't be more than two per cent

7- There won't be any poor people.

- a) No! More people will be poor than ever before.
- b) Why? Are there poor people now?
- c) Unfortunately, this isn't possible, but hopefully, we'll be able to help poor people more.
- d) I agree. Everybody will have a good life.

8- Everybody will have a house, a car and a garden.

- a) I don't agree. Half of the population will be homeless.
- b) We don't now, so we won't in the future.
- c) It's a nice idea, but not possible to achieve.
- d) Yes, of course. At some time the government will rebuild all our cities.

9- There will be

- a) more crime in Turkey than ever before
- b) no change in the crime rate
- c) an increase in some crimes, but a decrease in others
- d) no crime anywhere

10- There won't be any bribery cases.

- a) Yes, there will. More people will be dishonest.
- b) Why does it matter? No one cares anyway.
- c) Sadly, some people will always accept bribes. It's human nature.
- d) No, there won't because everyone will be aware how bad it is for the country.

11- There will be no inequality in any area.

- a) Rubbish! People's lives will be awful because of inequality.
- b) Well, no one really notices inequality, do they?
- c) I hope things will improve, but there will always be some differences.
- d) Definitely. We'll all treat each other as equals.

12- All nations will live in peace.

- a) In 2017, we'll be in the middle of the Third World War.
- b) That's nice, but war doesn't affect my life anyway.
- c) People will understand each other better, but we can't expect total peace.
- d) Yes, and we won't need any armies or weapons.

13- Fossil fuels will run out.

- a) Yes, and there will be no cars or electricity.
- b) What are fossil fuels?
- c) Well, there will be a shortage, but we'll be better at using other methods.
- d) It doesn't matter. Everyone will use solar, wind or water power and they're much cleaner.

14- The hole in the ozone layer will be much worse.

- a) Yes, and many more people will die of skin cancer.
- b) Perhaps, but it isn't a problem in Turkey, anyway.
- c) We can do something now to stop this happening.
- d) No. Everybody is taking action now, so it will get better, not worse.

Now, count up your score and look at your assessment below.

Mostly a's — Pessimistic

Oh dear! Life is very depressing for you, isn't it? You see disaster in every situation. Look around you. It's not all bad, is it? Try to look on the bright side occasionally.

Mostly c's — Realistic

You have a very realistic view, and you obviously think about things very carefully. You want to be optimistic, but know it's not always possible. But don't stop smiling. People like you can change things, you know.

Mostly b's — Indifferent

Hello! Wake up! You don't seem to be aware of anything. Try to take more interest in other things and think about them seriously. After all, you are living on this planet, not in space!

Mostly d's — Optimistic

Well, you certainly see the world through rose-coloured glasses! Isn't life wonderful? Come on! Get your head out of the clouds! It's nice to be cheerful, but don't lose touch with reality.

You must have some views that you and your friends either agree or disagree about. Talk about them. Here are some useful expressions.

Agreeing

Yes, I agree with you.
Yes, you are completely right.
That's true.

Disagreeing

No, I don't agree with you.
I totally disagree with you.
You may be right about that, but what about ...

UNIT 4

PAST TENSES

Simple Past or Past Continuous

1 a) Say which tense is used in the following situations — *simple past or past continuous*.

- | | |
|---|--------------------|
| a) To talk about an action that happened at a definite time in the past | <u>simple past</u> |
| b) To express an action happening around a certain point in the past | _____ |
| c) To express a changing event in the past | _____ |
| d) To express a series of actions that followed one another | _____ |
| e) To express an action which began before and was interrupted by another action | _____ |
| f) To talk about two actions going on for some time parallel to each other | _____ |
| g) To talk about an action which happened in the past, without giving a definite time, but which has no connection to the present | _____ |

b) Now study the sentences below and decide which definition goes with each.

- 1- We were all anxious because Dad's condition **was getting** worse with each day. _____ **c**
- 2- We **had** a wonderful holiday in the mountains last summer. _____
- 3- They **left** the cinema, **hired** a taxi and **went** home. _____
- 4- I **was sitting** on a park bench reading a book while the children **were playing**. _____
- 5- This time last year, she **was studying** hard for her final exams. _____
- 6- Some critics think that "Falstaff" is the best story Shakespeare ever **wrote**. _____
- 7- Some guests turned up unexpectedly while we **were having** dinner. _____

c) Write an example for each use of the *simple past* and *past continuous* in the same order as in part (b).

- a) _____
- b) _____
- c) _____
- d) _____
- e) _____
- f) _____
- g) _____

2

Complete the sentences using the simple past or past continuous of the verbs in parentheses. Pay attention to whether the verb is active or passive.

- 1- **A:** Who _____ you _____ (talk) to when I _____ (come) in?
B: Jennifer. She _____ (send) you her regards.
- 2- **A:** _____ you _____ (see) the big gold watch Martin _____ (wear) at the party?
B: Oh, yes. I think it _____ (give) to him by his parents for his birthday.
- 3- We _____ (encounter) a lot of problems while we _____ (film) the fire scenes.
- 4- Do you think the actor or a stuntman _____ (use) while this scene _____ (shoot)?
- 5- I think the girl _____ (follow) because she _____ (constantly, look) behind, and she _____ (seem) to be very anxious.
- 6- The guests _____ (all, search) thoroughly before they _____ (allow) into the conference hall.
- 7- It _____ (snow) when I _____ (wake) up this morning, so I _____ (decide) not to go shopping.
- 8- **A:** Where were you yesterday?
B: I _____ (look) for a new suit for work, but I couldn't find one.
- 9- Jill _____ (study) hard for her maths exam while everybody else at home _____ (sleep) comfortably in their beds.
- 10- When everybody _____ (finish) writing their answers, they _____ (hand) the papers to the teacher.
- 11- The Second World War _____ (cost) the lives of thousands of people.
- 12- No, I _____ (not, sleep) at eight o'clock last night — I _____ (listen) to the news.

3

Complete the sentences using the simple past or past continuous of the verbs in the list. Pay attention to whether the verb is active or passive.

pay
fall
watch

advise
climb
drive

run
announce
trip

carry
cook
hurt

put
chat
stop

- 1- Why did you turn the television off? I _____ that programme.
- 2- She spent all her money as soon as she _____, so now she can't afford to do anything.
- 3- Our cat got stuck while it _____ a tree yesterday.
- 4- I'm sure I _____ my dictionary on the shelf, so where is it now?
- 5- The travel agent _____ me to travel on Thursday because, she said, Friday would be really busy.
- 6- **A:** How _____ you _____ your ankle?
B: Well, I _____ for the bus and I _____ over something on the pavement.
- 7- I couldn't find anyone to help me with those heavy bags, so I _____ them myself.
- 8- He _____ by the police because he _____ dangerously.
- 9- I _____ dinner when the phone rang, so I couldn't answer it.
- 10- I couldn't concentrate on the film properly because the people behind me _____ loudly.
- 11- It was so slippery on that little bridge that I nearly _____ in the river.
- 12- I was in the café when the departure of the train _____, so I didn't hear it.

4

Sometimes an expression of place can come between the helping verb "be" and the verb "-ing" in continuous tenses.

eg: Dad is watering the flowers in the garden.
Dad is in the garden watering the flowers.

a) Rewrite the sentences changing the position of the expression of place as in the examples.

- 1- Alex and Tim were talking busily in the canteen. _____
- 2- The children are making a sand castle on the beach. _____
- 3- The students were carrying out an experiment in the laboratory. _____
- 4- Mum was lying on the sofa in the living room. _____
- 5- Mr Griffin is attending a conference in Rome. _____

b) Answer the following questions in the present or past continuous tenses using the words given in parentheses.

eg: A: Where were you last night? (*at home/prepare my report*)
 B: *I was at home preparing my report.*

- 1- A: Where was your father last Saturday? (*at the club/play tennis*)
 B: _____
- 2- A: Is Mrs Jenkins here today? (*in her office/interview an applicant*)
 B: Yes. _____
- 3- A: Have you seen Tommy? (*in his room/put away his toys*)
 B: Yes. _____
- 4- A: Did you spend the weekend at home? (*in Izmir/visit my parents*)
 B: No. _____

5

HOW ABOUT BEING A DETECTIVE?

Last night, the rich and famous pop star, Tony Robbins, was found dead in his flat. The three people who looked after him, his secretary, his housekeeper and his cook, lived in the flat next to his, and they all had a key to his flat. They are all at the police station now, and Inspector Sharpeye is questioning them.

Here are his questions and their statements:

- Inspector:** Now I want to know where you each were at the time of the shooting, what you were doing, and whether you saw anyone or not.
- Secretary:** I was in my room, drinking tea and watching TV. My room is right at the back, so I never hear when anyone goes through to Mr Robbins' flat anyway.
- Cook:** I was very tired, so I had an early night — I think it was around 8.30 — and I was sleeping when it happened. I woke to the sound of the shooting.
- Housekeeper:** I was on my way to ask Mr Robbins what he wanted for supper.
- Inspector:** Did you notice the time of the shooting?
- Secretary:** I think it was a little after 10.30. Bill Flynn's Chat Show was just over.
- Cook:** It was soon after the housekeeper went past my room to see Mr Robbins. It must have been shortly before 11.
- Housekeeper:** I was so frightened that I didn't think about the time. I ran back to my room, locked myself in and called the police.

At the end of the enquiry, the Inspector allowed two of them to go home, but one of them had to stay at the police station because he/she was the murderer. Have you found him/her? Explain how.

6

a) Complete the passage using the *simple past* or *past continuous* of the verbs in parentheses.

Many people around the world believe that Unidentified Flying Objects (UFOs) come from other planets, and there are many reports about the people who claim that they've seen a UFO or UFOs. Here's one of the reports.

Was It a UFO Driving Them?

One day a journalist and his wife (1)_____ (*drive*) their car from Salisbury in Rhodesia to Durban in South Africa. While they (2)_____ (*drive*) along, a bright revolving light (3)_____ (*appear*) behind them. The light (4)_____ (*fly*) along at the same speed as the car, keeping just above it. The man (5)_____ (*try*) to increase his speed, but then he (6)_____ (*discover*) that the brakes (7)_____ (*not, work*), and that he couldn't steer the car. But still, the car (8)_____ (*go*) round all the bends perfectly without his control. By this time it had got very cold in the car, so they (9)_____ (*put*) on their pullovers. Soon the journalist's wife (10)_____ (*fall*) asleep. The sun (11)_____ (*rise*) when they (12)_____ (*reach*) the South African border. Suddenly the ball of revolving light (13)_____ (*disappear*) and the man was able to steer the car again. They (14)_____ (*drive*) to the nearest petrol station, but there they (15)_____ (*get*) another surprise. Although they had travelled over 200 miles, the car had used less than a gallon of petrol and there was a difference of only ten miles on the mileometer. The man was so puzzled that he (16)_____ (*go*) to see a doctor. Under hypnosis he (17)_____ (*remember*) all the details of the journey. The last great surprise was when the journalist (18)_____ (*discover*) that his car (19)_____ (*no longer, need*) any oil and that, after the strange journey, his tyres (20)_____ (*not, wear*) out any more.

But this is not the only example of people and cars being transported by strange forces from one place to another.

A lawyer who (21)_____ (*drive*) his car in Argentina, (22)_____ (*disappear*) in a cloud of bright light and (23)_____ (*wake*) up to find himself, and his car, in Mexico City.

b) Say whether the following statements are **True** or **False**.

- 1- The journalist was conducting some research about UFOs when he met one of them.
- 2- The distance from Salisbury to Durban was only ten miles.
- 3- The man went to see a doctor in order to remember the forgotten parts of the journey.
- 4- The man lost control of his car because he was so frightened.
- 5- The lawyer in Argentina was transported in his car from one place to another by a strange force.
- 6- We understand from the passage that the lawyer slept during the journey.
- 7- The journalist's car didn't use any petrol at all during the strange journey.
- 8- In both cases, the strange force appeared to the people in the form of bright light.
- 9- During the journey, the journalist's wife fell out of the car.

WRITING: You must have heard of the reports about the Monster of Lake Van. Imagine that you were by the lake, and saw the monster. Make up a story explaining your feelings, describing the monster, etc.

UNIT 5

PERFECT TENSES

1 *Present Perfect Simple* or *Present Perfect Continuous*

a) Study the sentences below and then match them to the rules given in the box.

1. I can't find my key anywhere. I'm afraid I've **lost** it. _____
2. We've **been driving** since dawn and we still have a hundred miles ahead of us. _____
3. I think we've **driven** only half of the way so far, haven't we? _____
4. I've **read** that book twice, and I think I'll read it again. _____
5. A: Oh dear! You're out of breath.
B: Yes. I've **been running** all the way from the train station. _____
6. A: How long **have** you **had** this house, Jim? _____
B: For as long as I can remember. _____

- a) To express an action that started in the past, and is still continuing in the present
- b) To express a state that started in the past but is still true at the time of speaking
- c) If there is evidence that an activity has happened
- d) When you are talking about an action with a result in the present
- e) When you mention how many times the action has been repeated or how much of the action is completed up to the present

b) Write your own sentences for each use in part (a).

- 1- _____
- 2- _____
- 3- _____
- 4- _____
- 5- _____
- 6- _____

2 Complete the sentences using the *present perfect simple* or *present perfect continuous* of the verbs in parentheses.

- 1- **A:** Is the coffee good?
B: I _____ (*not, taste*) it yet.
- 2- The plumber _____ (*just, fix*) the leak in the bathroom. You can have a bath now.
- 3- I _____ (*try*) to concentrate on my work for the last hour, but I _____ (*only, write*) half of the composition so far.
- 4- Don't you think that's enough for today? You _____ (*play*) with the computer since lunchtime, and that was three hours ago.
- 5- The room smells of cigarettes. I think someone _____ (*smoke*) in here.
- 6- The workers are all exhausted because they _____ (*work*) hard all day.
- 7- **A:** Sally, _____ you _____ (*tidy*) up your room?
B: Yes, Mum. Everything is in order now.
- 8- I'm so angry! Someone _____ (*scratch*) the side of my new car.
- 9- Oh, you _____ (*change*) your hairstyle. It looks so nice!
- 10- When will this awful rain stop? It _____ (*rain*) non-stop for two days now.
- 11- **A:** How long _____ you _____ (*know*) Marcus?
B: Since we were children. We used to live in the same neighbourhood.
- 12- Poor Sally! She _____ (*look*) for a decent job since she left university, but she _____ (*not, find*) one yet. She _____ (*try*) several jobs, but none of them was satisfactory.

3 Complete the sentences using the *present perfect simple* or *present perfect continuous* of the verbs in the box.

finish	make	tell	read
cut	listen	write	crash
wait	belong	show	work

- 1- Quick! Get me a plaster. I _____ my finger.
- 2- I _____ him a hundred times not to do that, but he just won't listen.
- 3- We won't need to buy any food during the journey. Sarah _____ some sandwiches.
- 4- We _____ cleaning the kitchen. Do you want us to start doing the living room now?
- 5- I _____ to the radio all morning, but they haven't said anything about the train strike.
- 6- Mark _____ the car and it's going to cost nearly £1,000 to get it mended.
- 7- We _____ here for a bus for nearly forty-five minutes now. Come on, let's get a taxi.
- 8- My eyes ache! Tim and Mandy _____ me their holiday pictures, and there are hundreds of them.
- 9- That house _____ to my family for over seventy years.
- 10- He _____ application letters since nine o'clock — and it's now five o'clock!
- 11- **A:** You're covered in mud!
B: I know. I _____ in the garden all day.
- 12- I _____ two chapters of that book so far, but I'm not really enjoying it very much.

4

Present Perfect Simple or Simple Past
Present Perfect Continuous or Past Continuous

a) Decide which tense is used for the given situations and put a tick (✓) in the correct column.

	P.P. Simp.	P.P. Cont.	Simp. Past	Past Cont.
1. The action was in progress when another action interrupted it.	_____	_____	_____	✓
2. The action started in the past, and it's still continuing but it's temporary.	_____	_____	_____	_____
3. A state or an action (seen as permanent) which started in the past, and is still true.	_____	_____	_____	_____
4. You're talking about your past activities without giving a definite time.	_____	_____	_____	_____
5. You're talking about your past activities giving a definite time.	_____	_____	_____	_____
6. You're talking about your past activities following one after another.	_____	_____	_____	_____
7. You're reporting a very recently completed action.	_____	_____	_____	_____
8. You're talking about a very recently-stopped action which there is evidence for.	_____	_____	_____	_____
9. You're talking about the frequency of an action from the past to the present	_____	_____	_____	_____
10. You're talking about the frequency of a past action that has no connection with the present.	_____	_____	_____	_____
11. The action was in progress at a given time in the past.	_____	_____	_____	_____
12. You're talking about a state in the past that has no connection with the present.	_____	_____	_____	_____

b) Considering the definitions above, put the verbs in parentheses into the correct form.

- 1- I _____ (*visit*) the Louvre Museum several times during my stay in Paris.
- 2- Parasailing is a very enjoyable sport. I _____ (*try*) it several times.
- 3- This time last week, I _____ (*ski*) down a mountain in the Alps.
- 4- Let's go back to the hotel. We _____ (*ski*) since breakfast, and I'm exhausted.
- 5- I can't tell you whether she is a competent secretary or not. I _____ (*only, know*) her since yesterday morning.
- 6- Sally _____ (*move*) to a new flat in the centre. It's very convenient for her active social life.
- 7- Actually, she _____ (*move*) there just last week.
- 8- He was very clever as a child. He _____ (*understand*) everything very easily.
- 9- The man _____ (*open*) his suitcase and then _____ (*take*) out some papers.
- 10- A: What's the matter with Lucy? Her eyes are watery.
B: Well, she _____ (*cry*) because of the bad mark she got in the exam.
- 11- Oh dear! I _____ (*tear*) the back of my trousers. What shall I do now?
- 12- The mechanic _____ (*still, check*) the brakes when I went to pick up the car.

5 Simple Past or Past Perfect

Decide which tense is used for the given situations and put a tick (✓) in the correct column.

	Simple Past	Past Perfect
a) To show which of the two actions in the past happened first.	_____	_____
b) To talk about past actions in order of occurrence.	_____	_____
c) To talk about past actions giving a definite point of time in the past.	_____	_____
d) To stress that an action happened before a point of time in the past.	_____	_____

Now study the following sentences and match them to the definitions above.

- I **got** home, **made** a sandwich for myself and **ate** it in front of the TV. _____
- I **had decided** what to do before I spoke to you. _____
- When I phoned, Mary **had left** the office, so I couldn't give her the message. _____
- I **went** to see my parents last Saturday. _____

Note: With *after*, *before* and *as soon as*, you can use simple past instead of past perfect. The meaning doesn't change.

I went to bed as soon as the guests **left/had left**.
 Jim did his homework after he **watched/had watched** the film on TV.

But, with *when* the meaning changes depending on the tense you use.

Mary **had left** the office when I phoned. (She wasn't in the office, so I couldn't talk to her.)
 Mary **left** the office when I phoned. (I phoned Mary, then she left the office.)

6 Put the verbs in parentheses into the correct form: **simple past** or **past perfect**.
 Decide where both tenses are possible and where only one.

- Mum _____ (*be*) ill last night, but she _____ (*feel*) better after she _____ (*take*) a tablet.
- My son _____ (*be*) really excited when I _____ (*tell*) him that I was going to take him to a circus because he _____ (*never, go*) to a circus before.
- When she _____ (*open*) the drawer, she _____ (*realise*) to her horror that her jewellery _____ (*not, be*) where she _____ (*put*) it.
- As soon as they _____ (*announce*) the flight number, all the passengers _____ (*rush*) to the gate.
- Susan _____ (*fall*) off her bike the other day and _____ (*break*) her arm.
- After he _____ (*research*) the subject thoroughly, Michael _____ (*sit*) down to write his report.
- A young pianist _____ (*play*) a few pieces until the singer _____ (*arrive*).
- I _____ (*never, hear*) of that singer until you _____ (*mention*) her to me.

7 Present Perfect Simple or Past Perfect Simple

Complete the sentences using the **present perfect simple** or **past perfect simple** of the verbs in the box.

receive	turn	meet	order
start	make	warn	change
wash	decide	sleep	ask

- 1- He could hardly stay awake in the exam because he _____ really badly the night before.
- 2- I _____ just _____ a pot of tea. Would you like some?
- 3- The traffic was really bad, so when we got to the theatre, the play _____ already _____.
- 4- We _____ the books you want. They should be here next week.
- 5- **A:** _____ you _____ any money for our holiday yet?
B: No, but I got some traveller's cheques this morning.
- 6- Mum was furious when I got oil on my T-shirt because she _____ only _____ it the day before.
- 7- We _____ them not to play near the river, but they just ignored us.
- 8- I'm sure I _____ you before. Were you at James Hudson's party?
- 9- **A:** _____ you _____ that fax yet?
B: No, I'm still waiting for it to come.
- 10- I _____ Tony to come with us tomorrow. I hope you don't mind.
- 11- When I spoke to them, they _____ not to go after all.
- 12- When we got there, she _____ already _____ the heating on, so it was lovely and warm.

8 Complete the passage with the words in the box.

until	just as	then	because	but
before	that	so	after	what
	and	while	when	

Sue and Jack, a newly-married couple, hadn't spoken to each other for several days (1)_____ they had had a quarrel. It wasn't anything very important, (2)_____ they'd both taken it seriously.

One evening Jack arrived home from work very late. He was very tired, (3)_____ he went to bed soon after dinner. Sue wanted to do some chores (4)_____ she went to bed. (5)_____ she'd cleared the dinner table (6)_____ washed the dishes, she started reading a book. She fell asleep (7)_____ she was lying on the sofa reading her book. She slept there uncovered (8)_____ a noise from outside woke her up. She went to the window to see (9)_____ it was. She was relieved to see (10)_____ it was just the dog barking. (11)_____ she went to the bedroom. (12)_____ she was getting into bed, she found a note on her bedside table: "Wake me up at seven — Jack." It was nearly 8 o'clock (13)_____ Jack woke up the next morning. He, too, found a note on his bedside table. It said, "Wake up. It's seven — Sue."

9

Past Perfect Continuous

Past Perfect Continuous is the past form of the **Present Perfect Continuous**.

Present: I'm exhausted. I **ve been typing** for four hours non-stop.

Past: I was exhausted. I **had been typing** for four hours non-stop.

Present: She **has been attending** that English course for six months now, but she still can't speak a word!

Past: She **had been attending** that English course for six months, but she still couldn't speak a word!

Present: A: Oh dear! You are absolutely soaked!

B: Yes, I **ve been walking** in the rain.

Past: When Jim arrived home last night, he was absolutely soaked because he **had been walking** in the rain.

Complete the sentences with the **present perfect continuous** or **past perfect continuous** of the verbs in parentheses.

- 1- I'm sure they _____ (*gossip*) about us. Just look at their faces.
- 2- **A:** Mum, you _____ (*iron*) all morning. Why is it taking so long?
B: Mrs Wilson is ill, so I'm doing some for her as well.
- 3- They _____ (*dance*) all evening, so they were exhausted the following morning.
- 4- You _____ (*wear*) the same socks since last week, and they smell revolting now. You should remember to change them occasionally!
- 5- **A:** Where is Linda?
B: Well, she _____ (*pick*) some flowers for her teacher, so I expect she's still in the garden.
- 6- I think Gary's in a bad mood. He _____ (*stare*) out of the window and saying nothing for the last hour.
- 7- Will someone please answer the phone? It _____ (*ring*) for ten minutes!
- 8- When they moved last September, they _____ (*live*) in that house for over twenty years.
- 9- We _____ only _____ (*play*) for ten minutes when the rain started.
- 10- They _____ (*plant*) vegetables, so their hands were dirty.
- 11- I _____ (*type*) for an hour and I still have two reports to do.
- 12- We _____ (*wait*) for exactly half an hour when the bus finally arrived.
- 13- Because the children _____ (*fight*) all day, I sent them to bed early.
- 14- Let's wake him up and go out somewhere. He _____ (*sleep*) for nearly three hours.

10

Put the verbs in parentheses into the correct form: **past continuous** or **past perfect continuous**.

- 1- He _____ (*wear*) that shirt the last time I saw him. Hasn't he got another one?
- 2- She _____ (*not, feel*) well for some time when she finally decided to go to the doctor.
- 3- She _____ (*have*) a piano lesson when I arrived, so I waited outside till she'd finished.
- 4- He _____ only _____ (*ski*) for half an hour when he fell and broke his leg.
- 5- She _____ obviously _____ (*cry*) because her eyes were red.
- 6- While we _____ (*polish*) the floors, they _____ (*clean*) the windows, so we finished the work in half the time.
- 7- We moved the plant to the front garden because, for several months previously, it _____ (*not, grow*) very well in the back.
- 8- I couldn't believe it when you found my sunglasses. I _____ (*look*) for them since last month.
- 9- When he retired from the company in 1995, he _____ (*work*) there for thirty years.
- 10- I _____ just _____ (*start*) the last page of my assignment when the electricity went off.

11

Put the verbs in parentheses into the correct form: **present continuous**, **past continuous**, **present perfect continuous** or **past perfect continuous**.

- 1- **A:** _____ she _____ (*wave*) when we left?
B: No, I think she _____ (*cry*).
- 2- Go and talk to David. He _____ (*wait*) out there for over half an hour now. I expect he _____ (*get*) bored.
- 3- I _____ (*bring*) my cousin to the party tomorrow. She _____ (*long*) to meet you for ages.
- 4- I'm sure he _____ (*drive*) far too fast at the time of the accident. That's why he crashed — not because it _____ (*rain*), as he claims.
- 5- She _____ (*prepare*) for the wedding for months when her fiance decided to finish with her.
- 6- **A:** Your hands are filthy. What _____ you _____ (*do*)?
B: Oh, I _____ (*clear*) out the basement. It's really dusty down there.
- 7- **A:** Why _____ Shelly _____ (*sit*) in the corner on her own at the moment?
B: Oh, she _____ (*sulk*) because she thinks no one's noticed her new hairstyle!
- 8- We _____ (*travel*) since the morning, so we were all exhausted when we reached our destination.
- 9- The phone _____ (*ring*) when I got home, but I couldn't open the door fast enough to get to it.
- 10- I turned the heat off because the water _____ (*boil*).
- 11- **A:** Helen said she _____ (*not, come*) with us next weekend.
B: Oh, she _____ (*say*) that for over a week now. But I bet she turns up.
- 12- We _____ (*discuss*) the case for hours when we finally reached a decision.
- 13- **A:** Listen. I think the baby _____ (*cry*).
B: Strange! I checked her just a few minutes ago and she _____ (*sleep*).
- 14- **A:** Hi, Lucy. I _____ (*try*) to contact you for two days. Weren't you in town?
B: No, I was away on a business trip.

12

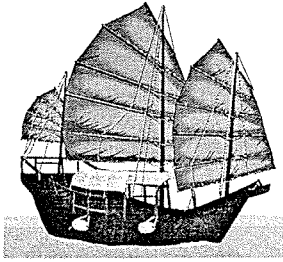
REVISION OF TENSES

Complete the sentences using the correct form of the verb in parentheses. Pay attention to whether the verb is *active* or *passive*.

- 1- The room _____ (*still, decorate*) when we arrived.
- 2- **A:** You've got a red nose!
B: I know. I _____ (*lie*) in the sun since this morning.
- 3- This bracelet _____ (*make*) about a hundred years ago, so it's very valuable.
- 4- When I walked into the room, he _____ (*look*) through my private things.
- 5- When the fire brigade arrived, the fire _____ already _____ (*put out*) by the staff.
- 6- Look! It's only six o'clock in the morning, but there's blue sky and not a cloud anywhere. It _____ (*be*) a lovely day.
- 7- The machine _____ (*not, work*) for a week, so we had to get an engineer in to look at it.
- 8- Sandy and Cliff will be soaked when they _____ (*get*) here. Look! It _____ (*absolutely, pour*) down outside.
- 9- The building _____ (*already, knock*) down when we arrived, so there was nothing we could do.
- 10- Slow down! You _____ (*walk*) too fast. I can't keep up with you.
- 11- This watch _____ (*just, hand*) in. Someone found it in reception.
- 12- By the time we reached the village, we _____ (*cycle*) for over five hours.
- 13- **A:** Do you want a cup of tea or coffee?
B: No thanks, but I _____ (*have*) some fruit juice if there _____ (*be*) any.
- 14- **A:** Where _____ you _____ (*be*) since last Monday?
B: Oh, I _____ (*go*) to my grandmother's on Tuesday and only _____ (*come*) back this morning.
- 15- Mike _____ (*have*) an accident while he _____ (*drive*) to the coast last weekend.
- 16- Mum _____ (*sleep*) at the moment. She's really tired because they _____ (*get*) back so late last night.
- 17- She _____ (*never, complain*) about anything. In fact, she's the most patient person I _____ (*ever, meet*) in my life.
- 18- I can't hang the washing out because it _____ (*rain*). In fact, it _____ (*rain*) since yesterday morning.
- 19- Look! That boy _____ (*fall*). The branches of that tree _____ (*not, be*) strong at all.
- 20- I _____ (*think*) about my future for ages and I _____ (*finally, decide*) that I _____ (*take*) next year off and _____ (*travel*) round the world.
- 21- Sorry! Paul _____ (*have*) a shower right now. Can I take a message?
- 22- I _____ (*finish*) dusting the living room. What _____ you _____ (*want*) me to do now?
- 23- Before the books _____ (*print*), every page has to be carefully checked.
- 24- At an auction in New York last week, a painting _____ (*sell*) for \$3,000,000.
- 25- When you _____ (*see*) Monica tomorrow, she _____ (*probably, give*) you that package.

13

- a) Complete the passage using the correct form of the verb in parentheses. Pay attention to whether the verb is active or passive. There may be more than one choice for some of them.



SINGLE-HANDED ROUND THE WORLD

When Francis Chichester (1) _____ (*leave*) Plymouth on August 27th, 1966, to sail round the world, he (2) _____ (*not, be*) an unknown man. His boat, *Gipsy Moth IV*, (3) _____ (*have*) a number of famous forerunners: *Gipsy Moth I*, the plane which he (4) _____ (*fly*) from London to Sydney in 1930, and *Gipsy Moth III*, the boat which he (5) _____ (*sail*) twice across the Atlantic, single-handed. (*Gipsy Moth II* was a practice boat.) *Gipsy Moth IV* (6) _____ (*specially, build*) for the journey round the world. It (7) _____ (*fit*) with all kinds of equipment, and (8) _____ (*stock*) with everything from biscuits to sardines, fresh eggs to potatoes, and several bottles of brandy, whisky and champagne. Its most important piece of technical equipment was a self-steering device to keep the boat running while Chichester (9) _____ (*eat*), (10) _____ (*sleep*) or (11) _____ (*change*) sails.

Chichester wasn't the first person to sail round the world — others (12) _____ (*do*) it before. The new side of his voyage was that he (13) _____ (*not, want*) to sail from one island to the next; instead he (14) _____ (*decide*) to follow the route of the great 19th century clippers with only one stop on the way. But the clippers (15) _____ (*do*) it with a crew of dozens; Chichester (16) _____ (*want*) to do it alone.

The first part of the journey (17) _____ (*seem*) easy enough. Somewhere in the middle of the Atlantic, he (18) _____ (*even, celebrate*) his 65th birthday. But then, after 75 days at sea and long after he (19) _____ (*round*) the Cape of Good Hope and (20) _____ (*enter*) the Indian Ocean, his luck (21) _____ (*change*). His self-steering device (22) _____ (*smash*) in a gale. After several days, he (23) _____ (*manage*) to repair the device well enough to get him to Sydney, where he (24) _____ (*arrive*) on December 12th. By that time, he (25) _____ (*sail*) for 107 days. Two months later, he (26) _____ (*be*) ready to start on the second part of his journey. Soon after he (27) _____ (*leave*) the Australian coast behind, however, he (28) _____ (*catch*) in a tropical cyclone and the boat (29) _____ (*almost, capsize*). Chichester (30) _____ (*lie*) down when it (31) _____ (*happen*). A lot of damage (32) _____ (*do*) to the boat, and it (33) _____ (*take*) Chichester days to repair it.

But the worst was still to come — Cape Horn. Before Chichester's journey, only one in eight attempts to round the Horn single-handed (34) _____ (*be*) successful. He (35) _____ (*struggle*) for four days, without any food or sleep when at last, an English patrol ship, which (36) _____ (*send*) out to watch him, (37) _____ (*find*) *Gipsy Moth*. She (38) _____ (*roll*) dangerously in the heavy seas. Compared to this, the rest of the journey (39) _____ (*be*) like a holiday cruise. 226 days and 30,000 miles after he (40) _____ (*leave*) Plymouth, he was back in England again, in May 1967. On the shore, 250,000 people (41) _____ (*wait*) to welcome him home.

b) Find the words or expressions in the passage which mean the same as:

- 1- something that existed or came before something else and is similar in some way _____
- 2- on your own; without any help; alone _____
- 3- piece of equipment which can be set to control the direction of a boat automatically _____
- 4- long journey on a ship or boat _____
- 5- fast sailing ship which was used in the past _____
- 6- many; large number _____
- 7- (of a boat) turn upside down in the water _____
- 8- try very hard to do something that is difficult _____
- 9- ship that moves around an area to make sure that there is no trouble or danger there _____

c) Say whether the following statements are *True* or *False*.

- 1- By the time Chichester came back to his starting point, he had flown 30,000 miles in Gipsy Moth IV.
- 2- Chichester had sailed across the Atlantic in Gipsy Moth I.
- 3- It took Chichester a hundred and seven days to reach Sydney.
- 4- In 1930, Chichester was the second person to fly from London to Sydney single-handed.
- 5- One disadvantage of Gipsy Moth IV was that Chichester would have to steer the boat himself all the time.
- 6- During his round-the-world trip, Chichester only stopped in Australia.
- 7- Chichester's boat capsized in a tropical cyclone near Cape Horn.
- 8- When the self-steering device broke in the gale, Chichester had to steer the boat himself till he reached Sydney.
- 9- Chichester stayed in Australia for two months before he started on the second part of his journey.
- 10- The journey began to be difficult seventy-five days after he'd left Plymouth.
- 11- Chichester's ancestors were also courageous seamen like him.
- 12- Chichester didn't experience any big problems during the final part of the journey.

d) Work with your partner. Imagine that you're a newspaper reporter interviewing Chichester after his round-the-world journey. You'll ask the questions and "Chichester" will answer.

eg: Reporter: Sir Francis, had you made any single-handed voyages before?
Chichester: Yes. I had sailed single-handed across the Atlantic twice.
Reporter: What was the most dangerous part of your last voyage?

Continue in the same way.

REVISION TEST 1

- 1- How _____ this dish _____? It _____ extremely complicated.
- A) is ... made/looks
B) will ... make/is looking
C) have ... made/has looked
D) was ... made/had been looking
- 2- The exam grades _____ at the end of next week.
- A) have announced
B) were announced
C) are announcing
D) will be announced
- 3- Don't panic, but I _____ we _____ !
- A) am thinking/have followed
B) thought/had been following
C) think/are being followed
D) will think/are followed
- 4- Oh dear, it _____ as if someone _____ us.
- A) has seemed/will be followed
B) is seeming/follows
C) had seemed/were followed
D) seems/is following
- 5- Ow! I _____ myself. Can you get me a plaster, please?
- A) have been cutting
B) had cut
C) have cut
D) am cutting
- 6- They _____ with us in our car because theirs _____ the night before.
- A) came/had been stolen
B) will come/will be stolen
C) have come/was stealing
D) are coming/has stolen
- 7- They _____ for less than twenty minutes when the rain _____.
- A) played/is started
B) had been playing/started
C) were playing/will start
D) had played/was started
- 8- My eyes really _____ because I _____ at that computer screen since ten o'clock this morning.
- A) are aching/looked
B) have ached/was looking
C) ache/have been looking
D) will ache/am looking
- 9- Look how high the cat _____! Any minute now, she _____ that she can't get down again.
- A) climbs/discovers
B) has climbed/is going to discover
C) is climbing/has discovered
D) climbed/is discovering
- 10- While I _____ those seeds in the garden, I _____ up this old vase.
- A) was planting/dug
B) have been planting/am digging
C) had been planted/was digging
D) planted/have been digging
- 11- I _____ sitting out in the garden at this time of year because it _____ so wonderful with all the flowers.
- A) am loving/is smelling
B) had loved/had smelt
C) love/smells
D) was loving/was smelling
- 12- The brochures _____ this afternoon, so we can start sending them out tomorrow.
- A) will be printed
B) will print
C) are printing
D) are going to print

13- A number of spectators _____ to leave the stadium because they _____ so badly.

- A) ask/had behaved
- B) were asked/were behaving
- C) has been asked/are behaving
- D) had asked/behaved

14- You _____ that bag for nearly five years now. Why don't you get a new one?

- A) are having
- B) have
- C) have had
- D) will have

15- The meeting _____ because the Chairman _____ away on an emergency.

- A) is cancelled/calls
- B) has been cancelled/has been called
- C) had cancelled/called
- D) cancelled/was called

16- Every summer, a huge festival of theatre and music _____ in Edinburgh, in Scotland.

- A) is holding
- B) holds
- C) is held
- D) were held

17- A: Oh no! I'm late and I _____ the beds yet.

B: Don't worry! I _____ them.

- A) don't make/do
- B) hadn't made/have done
- C) won't make/did
- D) haven't made/will do

18- By the time I _____ to the auction, the painting _____ .

- A) get/sells
- B) will get/is being sold
- C) have been getting/was sold
- D) got/had been sold

19- We couldn't have our meeting in the conference room because, at the time, it _____ for a seminar.

- A) used
- B) is used
- C) was being used
- D) will use

20- A: Gosh, those tomatoes are very big.

B: Yes, I _____ they _____ probably _____ in a greenhouse.

- A) imagine/were ... grown
- B) will imagine/will ... grow
- C) am imagining/are ... growing
- D) have imagined/have ... grown

21- A: What _____ you _____ to the party tonight?

B: I _____. What about you?

- A) will ... wear/don't decide
- B) have ... worn/am not deciding
- C) were ... wearing/didn't decide
- D) are ... wearing/haven't decided

22- She _____ for over eight hours, so she was really tired when she _____ .

- A) drove/arrives
- B) drives/will arrive
- C) had been driving/arrived
- D) is driving/has arrived

23- You can't sit here! I'm afraid these seats _____ for someone else.

- A) reserved
- B) have been reserved
- C) are reserving
- D) had reserved

24- The children _____ at each other, so I _____ to ask them to play more quietly.

- A) were screaming/had
- B) screamed/was having
- C) scream/had had
- D) are screaming/had been having

25- We _____ at home this holiday because we _____ to buy a car.

- A) are going to stay/are saving
- B) are staying/save
- C) stayed/had been saved
- D) have stayed/were saved

UNIT 6

Simple and Perfect Modals

Study the box.

Expressing Degrees of Certainty

Present

1. must

- A: Look! Jenny is reading the letter from her penpal, and she is smiling.
B: There **must be** some good news in it.

2. may/might/could

- A: John doesn't want to come with us.
B: Well, he **may/might/could be** in a bad mood, or he **may/might/could have** some other jobs to do. Who knows?

3. can't/couldn't

- A: That's Andy's car, isn't it?
B: It **can't/couldn't be** his car. His is red, not blue.

4. may not/might not

- A: Sally always gets bad marks in her history exams.
B: Well, she **may not/might not study** hard enough.

Past

1. must + have + past participle

- A: Yesterday, Jenny was smiling while she was reading the letter from her penpal.
B: There **must have been** some good news in it then.

2. may/might/could + have + past participle

- A: Yesterday John didn't want to go to the cinema with us.
B: Well, he **may/might/could have been** in a bad mood, or he **may/might/could have had** some other jobs to do.

3. can't/couldn't + have + past participle

- Yesterday Tim said he had seen Andy's car, but it **can't/couldn't have been** his because his car is red, not blue.

4. may not/might not + have + past participle

- A: Sally got a bad mark in her history exam yesterday.
B: Well, she **may not/might not have studied** hard enough, but who knows?

1

Yesterday James Scott, a very rich man, was found dead in his mansion. Inspector Sharpeye is investigating the case. So far, he has questioned those people who were at home at the time of the murder.

Study his notes and rewrite the underlined parts using the **modal + have + past participle** form. Pay attention to where you need a *negative* form.

- 1- Mr Scott was shot in the head from about a metre. I'm almost sure that he died immediately.
He must have died immediately. _____

- 2- All the doors were locked, but the window of Mr Scott's study room was open, so it's possible that someone in the house killed him. Otherwise, the only explanation is that the murderer came in through the window. (two sentences)

- 3- He was shot with one of the guns in his collection, and only he himself had the key. This makes it clear that the murderer knew where he kept the key.

- 4- There was £5,000 in the drawer of Mr Scott's study, and the money had been taken. It's possible that the murderer killed Mr Scott for the money. Or, perhaps, he or she didn't want to make the real reason known. (two sentences)

- 5- If the person only wanted the money, why did he kill Mr Scott then? Why didn't he or she take the money and leave him alive? Well, perhaps he or she didn't want to leave any evidence behind.

- 6- Mr Scott didn't have a good relationship with his wife. But Mrs Scott is in a wheelchair, and her hands shake terribly. I don't believe that she killed her husband herself, but, of course, it's possible that she hired someone to do it for her. (two sentences)

- 7- Mr Scott had had an argument with the gardener two days before the murder and had told him to leave the house in a week, so it's possible that the gardener killed him to get revenge.

- 8- But, no. It's not possible that he was in the house at the time. He said, in his statement, that he was at the village pub until 11.00 that night, and the barman and two other villagers confirmed his statement. However, Mr Scott was shot at 10 p.m.

2

Complete the sentences using the verb in parentheses with the simple or perfect form of **must, may/might/could, may not/might not** and **can't/couldn't**. Pay attention to whether the verb is active or passive. For the passive, use **modal + have been + past participle**.

eg: A: I haven't eaten anything since this morning.

B: Oh, you must be very hungry then.

A: I couldn't believe my eyes. He ate three huge sandwiches all on his own.

B: Oh, he must have been very hungry then. I know that, normally, he doesn't eat so much.

1- **A:** Yesterday, Sandra couldn't stop talking about the pen she'd lost, but so far today, she hasn't mentioned it once.

B: Well, she _____ (*find*) it, I suppose.

2- **A:** The staff in the other department have just brought a cake in and now they're putting candles on it.

B: Well, it _____ (*be*) someone's birthday then.

3- **A:** Look at Mary's lovely photos of London. She's a very good photographer, isn't she?

B: She _____ (*take*) them herself! She's never been to London.

4- **A:** Oh, who's that telephoning us now? Do you think it's Michelle?

B: No, it _____ (*be*) Michelle because she's on a flight to Canada right now.

A: Well, her flight _____ (*take*) off yet.

B: It definitely has. I watched it leave with my own eyes only two hours ago.

5- **A:** Oh look, all our plants are dying. Paul _____ (*forget*) to water them while we were away.

6- **A:** What's wrong with Jeremy? He's shaking.

B: Well, he _____ (*be*) cold. He has just been swimming.

A: Yes, but it's boiling hot today.

B: I know, that's why I wasn't sure.

7- **A:** I wonder why Roger didn't eat his rice pudding.

B: Well, he _____ (*like*) rice pudding.

A: What a silly suggestion! Everybody likes rice pudding, don't they?

8- The house at the end of our road _____ (*sell*). The "For Sale" sign has been taken down.

9- The money _____ (*steal*) by anyone in the office because no one knew it was there.

10- **A:** Linda _____ (*know*) about today's meeting.

B: Why not?

A: Because I forgot to tell her and I don't know if anyone else saw her.

11- **A:** Where's Jane? She's late.

B: Well, she _____ (*oversleep*). She looked really tired last night, you know.

Or, she _____ (*be*) stuck in traffic. The roads are terrible this morning.

12- **A:** Gosh! You _____ (*be*) really tired. You've been working since seven this morning, haven't you?

B: Yes, you're right. I'm exhausted.

13- **A:** Derek _____ (*be*) at the party this evening.

B: But he hasn't been invited.

A: I know, but I've just heard Terry telling him about it, and you know how he hates to miss anything!

14- **A:** The light on the answer machine is flashing, but there's no message. I wonder who called?

B: It _____ (*be*) Annie. She occasionally calls in the evening.

15- **A:** This gold ring _____ (*make*) in Britain.

B: Why?

A: Because it has this mark which is only used in Britain on it.

B: Well, it _____ (*import*) and then stamped.

A: Possible, I suppose, but unlikely.

Study the box.

Present

should + base form of the verb (*should do*)

Celia very often forgets to set her alarm clock, and then she gets to work late. She **should set** her alarm clock. She **shouldn't forget** to set her alarm clock.

Past

should + have + past participle (*should have done*)

Celia forgot to set her alarm clock yesterday, so she was late for work. She **should have set** her alarm clock. She **shouldn't have forgotten** to set her alarm clock.

3

Mike is a very reckless driver, and never obeys the traffic rules. Yesterday, he made lots of mistakes, and nearly caused other drivers to have accidents. Here are the mistakes he made.

Make sentences using the **should/shouldn't + have + past participle** form as in the example.

eg: He gave the wrong signal. He shouldn't have given the wrong signal.

- 1- He didn't position his car correctly on the road long enough before he wanted to turn.

- 2- He ignored the solid white line on the road.

- 3- He followed the car in front too closely.

- 4- He drove in the middle of the road.

- 5- He didn't pass slow-moving vehicles quickly enough.

- 6- He didn't look out for STOP signs.

- 7- He changed lanes too often.

- 8- He didn't dip his headlights when other cars came towards him at night.

- 9- He drove at high speed through residential areas.

- 10- He didn't put out his cigarette at the filling station.

- 11- He didn't slow down for the bends.

- 12- He drove across the level-crossing without checking properly in both directions.

4

Complete the sentences using the present or perfect form of "**should**", with the verb in the active or passive form. Decide whether the sentence should be positive or negative.

eg: It's freezing outside today. You shouldn't go (go) out, or your cold will get worse. It was freezing outside yesterday. Jim's mother advised him not to go out, but he didn't listen to her, and today his cold is worse. He should have stayed (stay) at home yesterday.

- 1- These strawberries won't keep long. They _____ (eat) right away, or they'll rot.
- 2- You _____ (criticise) Tim so severely in front of his friends. He was really embarrassed.
- 3- You _____ (criticise) your children all the time like that. It won't help them at all.
- 4- You _____ (tell) us that you weren't coming. We wasted a lot of time waiting for you there.
- 5- The plant died because it was in direct sunlight. It _____ (put) there in front of the window.
- 6- You _____ (eat) so much, darling. You're putting on weight.
- 7- Gary caused lots of trouble at Tina's party last Saturday. She _____ (invite) him.
- 8- Children who are shy by nature _____ (encourage), but gently, to take part in activities at school.
- 9- You _____ (talk) on the phone so long Mary. We're having difficulty paying the bills.
- 10- We _____ (inform) about the changes to the schedule before we came here.
- 11- You _____ (look) up every word in the dictionary. It's not advisable. Instead, you _____ (try) to guess the meaning from the context.
- 12- You _____ (sell) your car to the first person to answer your advert. Perhaps someone will come and offer more, but now it is too late.

5

Complete the sentences with suitable prepositions.

- 1- Don't argue _____ your father _____ money. We are _____ a bad situation financially.
- 2- I want to escape _____ this awful city life, and to settle _____ a small town _____ the south.
- 3- The manager wasn't very impressed _____ the new secretary's performance.
- 4- **A:** Will you pay the rent _____ the beginning of the month?
B: No. _____ the fifteenth.
- 5- **A:** When are you leaving here _____ Rome?
B: _____ Friday night.
- 6- Everybody was shocked _____ the wedding ceremony when the bride and the groom entered the room both dressed _____ jeans and T-shirts.

UNIT 7

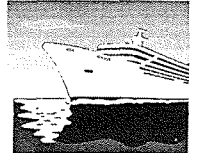
Present and Past Participles as Adjectives

1

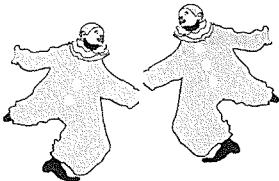
Fill in the blanks with **-ed** or **-ing**.



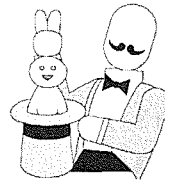
- 1- **A:** I hear that you're travelling to work by plane. How is it?
B: Oh, it's very interesting. I'm really interested in flying.



- 2- **A:** You were on a cruise last month, I think? How was it?
B: Oh, it was okay, on the whole, but being at sea for a month was boring. I was very bored.



- 3- **A:** Were the clowns amusing last night?
B: Oh yes. The children were really amused.



- 4- **A:** How about the magician's performance? Was it entertaining?
B: Very! We were all entertained.



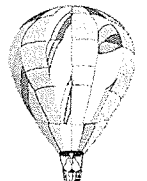
- 5- **A:** You tried water-skiing yesterday. How did you feel?
B: Oh, I felt excited! Moving so fast on the water was very exciting!



- 6- **A:** What did the taxi driver think about the rude customer?
B: Well, it was an annoying situation, so he was very annoyed.



- 7- **A:** I've heard that Jake was dismissed from work. He must be very depressed.
B: He is, indeed, and I must admit that it's a depressing situation.



- 8- **A:** How was the balloon trip yesterday?
B: It was fascinating. I was so fascinated by the scenery around us.

2 Complete the sentences with the **present** or **past participle** forms (as adjectives) of the verbs in parentheses.

eg: The horror movie was really frightening. The children were all frightened. (*frighten*)

- 1- I noticed that John blushed when he tripped and fell over at the party. It was an _____ (*embarrass*) situation, so John was really _____ (*embarrass*).
- 2- Sue is very _____ (*charm*), so she always has admirers around her.
- 3- Are you _____ (*interest*) in this programme? If not, I'll turn it off.
- 4- Your attitude towards her isn't _____ (*encourage*). On the contrary, it is quite _____ (*discourage*).
- 5- Alice must have been _____ (*disappoint*) when she didn't pass her exams.
- 6- Alice thought her exam results were really _____ (*disappoint*).
- 7- The horror film on TV last night was _____ (*disgust*). It was full of bloody scenes.
- 8- The economic situation in the country is very _____ (*worry*).
- 9- People are _____ (*worry*) about the economic situation in the country.
- 10- I wonder why Lucy is so _____ (*depress*) these days. She never smiles at all.
- 11- I can't understand how some people find those violent films _____ (*entertain*).
- 12- I was _____ (*amaze*) at the dance contest last night. The performance of the Russian dancers was especially _____ (*amaze*).

3 Complete the table.

Verb	Present Participle	Past Participle
1- bore	_____	_____
2- tire	_____	_____
3- _____	horrifying	_____
4- _____	_____	irritated
5- please	_____	_____
6- _____	fascinating	_____
7- _____	_____	confused
8- _____	_____	amazed
9- annoy	_____	_____
10- _____	exciting	_____
11- _____	_____	worried
12- _____	exhausting	_____

4

How would you feel in the following situations or how would you describe them? Use the present or past participle form of the verbs in the box or add your own. Use "I would be + past participle" to express your feelings, and "It would be + present participle" to describe the situations.

embarrass irritate annoy discourage interest
bore exhaust surprise distress

eg: Someone shouted at you and you knew that he wasn't right.

*I would be very **annoyed** if someone shouted at me when he wasn't right.*

*It would be very **annoying** if someone shouted at me when he wasn't right.*

Your elder sister is taking the university exam, but you don't think that she can pass it.

*It would be really **surprising** if she passed the university exam.*

*I would be very **surprised** if she passed the university exam.*

1- You studied hard for an exam, but you still failed it.

2- Your skirt came down while you were dancing at the disco.

3- You like camping holidays and your friend invited you to go on one.

4- You had to clean a huge house on your own.

5- You wanted to set up a business, but everybody you talked to advised against it.

6- You're on a coach and the person next to you keeps cracking his knuckles.

7- You're working in an office and do the same things day after day.

UNIT 8

Adjective and Adverb Structures

Study the box.

a) too + adjective/adverb + to-infinitive

Jenny is too young. She **can't** stay here alone. / Jenny is **too young to stay** here alone.
The water is too cold. We **can't** swim in it. / The water **is too cold to swim** in.
This suitcase is too heavy. I **can't** carry it.
This suitcase **is too heavy for me to carry**.

b) adjective/adverb + enough + to-infinitive

Peter is old enough. He can stay here alone. / Peter is **old enough to stay** here alone.
The water is warm enough. We can swim in it. / The water is **warm enough (for us) to swim** in.
The teacher didn't speak clearly enough. We couldn't understand her.
The teacher didn't speak **clearly enough for us to understand**.

1 Combine the following sentences using **too** and **enough**. Use "for + object" where necessary.

eg: This box is heavy. I can't lift it. That box is light. I can lift it.
This box is too heavy for me to lift. *That box is light enough for me to lift.*

- 1- This box is big. It can hold all these books. _____
- 2- This knife is blunt. I can't cut the meat with it. _____
- 3- You're working hard. You can pass your exams. _____
- 4- You're tall. You can reach the top shelf. _____
- 5- That dress is expensive. I can't afford it. _____
- 6- She isn't experienced. She can't run the office on her own. _____
- 7- You're walking slowly. You won't catch the train. _____
- 8- Dad is tired. He can't take us to the amusement park. _____

2 Rewrite the sentences with **too** or **enough** using the adjectives and adverbs given.

weak tall slowly quiet young loudly blunt wide

eg: You're **too short** to play basketball. — You **aren't tall enough** to play basketball.
She **isn't old enough** to wear make-up. — She **is too young** to wear make-up.

- 1- The road was too narrow for two cars to pass each other. _____
- 2- You aren't driving fast enough to get there on time. _____
- 3- She isn't strong enough to stand the harsh climate there. _____
- 4- The room was too noisy for me to concentrate on my work. _____
- 5- These scissors aren't sharp enough to cut this material with. _____
- 6- She spoke too softly for the people at the back to hear. _____

Study the box.

a) so + adjective/adverb + that clause

The weather was cold. I couldn't go out for a walk.
 The weather was **so cold** that I couldn't go out for a walk.

He was driving carelessly. I'm not surprised he had an accident.
 He was driving **so carelessly** that I'm not surprised he had an accident.

b) such a/an + adjective + singular countable noun + that clause

It was a nice day. I didn't want to stay indoors.
 It was **such a nice day** that I didn't want to stay indoors.

such + adjective + uncountable noun/countable plural noun + that clause

They were naughty children. I had to punish them.
 They were **such naughty children** that I had to punish them.

It was very hot coffee. I had to wait before I could drink it.
 It was **such hot coffee** that I had to wait before I could drink it.

3

Combine the two sentences using **so ... that** or **such ... that**.

eg: The question was easy. It took me only two minutes to write down the answer.
The question was so easy that it took me only two minutes to write down the answer.

It was an easy question. It took me only two minutes to write down the answer.
It was such an easy question that it took me only two minutes to write down the answer.

1- She was a successful student. She came top in every exam she took.

2- Her house is very big. It takes her two days to clean it all.

3- Our English teacher speaks very quickly. We can't keep up with him.

4- It was very hot weather. It was impossible to relax even in the shade.

5- The play was boring. I didn't go in after the interval.

6- It was an interesting book. I couldn't put it down.

7- They are very cheap shoes. I can afford to buy two pairs.

8- The exam was very difficult. I could only answer half of the questions.

4 Rewrite the following sentences using **so ... that** or **such ... that**.

eg: The dish was so spicy that I couldn't eat it.
It was such a spicy dish that I couldn't eat it. _____

He is such an ambitious man that I'm sure he'll achieve his aim.
He is so ambitious that I'm sure he'll achieve his aim. _____

- 1- He was such a tall boy that he was chosen for the school basketball team very easily.

- 2- They are so rude that nobody in town really likes them.

- 3- These shirts are so nice that you should really get one.

- 4- It was such a successful play that the audience applauded for ten minutes.

- 5- The dishes were so delicious that we all ate too much.

- 6- It was such awful weather that we had to cancel our trip.

5 Your friend, Ali, always uses very exaggerated statements when speaking. You had the following conversation with Ali yesterday, and he exaggerated everything again. Complete Ali's part in the dialogue using the statements in the box.

- You:** You went to get the concert tickets yesterday. Was the queue long?
Ali: It was such a long queue (1) _____
You: You also went to do some shopping at Carrefour, I think. Was it crowded?
Ali: It was so crowded (2) _____
You: Oh! Suna said you'd taken a walk together along the seashore. Did you enjoy it?
Ali: Oh, it was awful! It was so windy (3) _____
You: Aren't you a bit too heavy for that! Anyway, I heard that you babysat for your sister last weekend. How were the children?
Ali: Oh, they are such noisy kids (4) _____
You: By the way, Suna said you quarrelled with Suat and he left the room in anger, slamming the door very loudly.
Ali: Oh yes. He slammed the door so loudly (5) _____
You: Have you seen the new student in 6/B?
Ali: You mean the one who is extremely tall, I think. Yes. I was behind her in the lunch queue yesterday. She is such a tall girl (6) _____
You: Aren't you exaggerating?
Ali: Who? Me? I never exaggerate anything!
You: Anyway, shall we go for lunch now?
Ali: Oh, this is the best suggestion I've ever heard! I'm so hungry (7) _____

- a) that I couldn't reach any of the shelves.
- b) that it sounded like a bomb exploding.
- c) that I couldn't see the end from where I stood.
- d) that she looked like a huge tower in front of me.
- e) that I could eat a horse.
- f) that I felt as if I was in the middle of a battlefield.
- g) that I was nearly blown away.

Study the box.

the + comparative adj./adv. + the + comparative adj./adv.

Use this structure when you are talking about a parallel change in two things.

As you practise playing the piano more, you'll become better at it.

The more you practise playing the piano, **the better** you'll become at it.

That child becomes more and more irritable as he gets older.

The older that child gets, **the more irritable** he becomes.

As she studied harder, she began to get better grades.

The harder she studied, **the better** grades she began to get.

6

Match the following sentences with the best endings.

- 1- The less nervous you feel,
- 2- The harder you try to persuade him,
- 3- The more you practise your English,
- 4- The larger your house is,
- 5- The lighter your rucksack,
- 6- The more carefully you listen to your parents,
- 7- The more you read,
- 8- The longer you put off going to the dentist,

- a) the more obstinate he seems to get.
- b) the more comfortable you'll be during the hike.
- c) the longer it will take to clean it.
- d) the more you learn.
- e) the worse that decay will get.
- f) the more you'll learn from their experience.
- g) the more fluent you'll become in it.
- h) the more chance you'll have of passing your driving test.

7

Complete the sentences in a suitable way.

eg: The deeper we went into the forest, *the more frightened we felt.* _____

- 1- The further I carried the suitcase, _____
- 2- The earlier we leave, _____
- 3- The longer I waited for him to come, _____
- 4- The more I got to know him, _____
- 5- The less you spend on make-up, _____

UNIT 9

Gerunds and Infinitives

Study the box.

Gerunds

- a) **As the subject of the sentence:** *Driving* at great speeds is dangerous.
b) **After prepositions:** I'm afraid *of walking* in deserted streets alone at night.
c) **After certain verbs:** I *enjoy swimming* in the sea but not in a pool.

Common verbs followed by the gerund:

admit	delay	keep	risk
avoid	deny	mind	stop
can't help	discuss	miss	suggest
can't stand	dislike	postpone	tolerate
complete	enjoy	practise	
consider	finish	quit	

- 1** Complete the sentences using the gerund form of the verbs in the list as in the example.

eat find iron wear win test stare
dive swim drive play

eg: Ironing is the most boring chore for me.

- _____ in this river can be dangerous because of the strong currents.
- _____ a huge amount of money on the football pools must be wonderful.
- _____ a balanced diet is important to good health.
- _____ in heavy traffic is frustrating.
- _____ drugs on animals is cruel.
- _____ cheap accommodation in the city centre is nearly impossible.
- _____ hide-and-seek was my favourite game as a child.
- _____ at people is not polite.
- _____ into the sea from a high cliff is dangerous.
- _____ glasses all the time is very uncomfortable.

- 2** Compare the following things using the adjectives in the box.

interesting good safe difficult useful healthy

eg: write a story/study a text book

Writing a story is more interesting than studying a text book.

- travel by train/travel by coach _____
- climb stairs/take the lift _____
- cook meals/do the dishes _____
- read a book/watch TV _____
- speak English/write it _____

3

Make true sentences expressing your own feelings or thoughts with the given words as in the example.

be able to speak a foreign language
kill animals for sport
read one's personal letters
do homework
sleep on a hard bed

ride horseback
take regular walks
try new recipes
cycle uphill
take a trip round the world

You can use the adjectives in the box, or add your own.

<i>helpful</i>	<i>cruel</i>	<i>enjoyable</i>	<i>uncomfortable</i>	<i>difficult</i>
<i>fascinating</i>	<i>boring</i>	<i>rude</i>	<i>healthy</i>	<i>necessary</i>

eg: *Being able to speak a foreign language can be helpful when you're looking for a job.*

- 1- _____
- 2- _____
- 3- _____
- 4- _____
- 5- _____
- 6- _____
- 7- _____
- 8- _____
- 9- _____

4

Complete the sentences with a suitable *preposition + gerund* of the verbs in parentheses.

eg: I'm not very good at remembering (remember) names.

- 1- I had no difficulty _____ (find) Sally's house because she'd given me good directions.
- 2- I was ten minutes late, so I apologised to the teacher _____ (interrupt) the lesson.
- 3- I'm fed up _____ (listen) to the same cassette again and again! Can't you put something else on for a change?
- 4- **A:** Has Lucy succeeded _____ (pass) her driving test?
B: Unfortunately, not. She'll try it again another time.
- 5- Did you thank Uncle John _____ (help) you with your maths assignment?
- 6- Are you thinking _____ (leave) your work if you pass the university exam?
- 7- Nowadays most children prefer playing with a computer _____ (go) out to parks or playgrounds.
- 8- I'm tired _____ (wait) for the bus. Come on! Let's take a taxi.
- 9- My son is very fond _____ (lie) in front of the fire reading adventure stories.
- 10- You must be proud _____ (be) the top student in your class.
- 11- My father is hopeless _____ (fix) things, but brilliant _____ (cook).
- 12- Are you afraid _____ (stay) at home alone at night?
- 13- The children are very excited _____ (go) on a picnic tomorrow.
- 14- Jim is furious with his little sister _____ (tear) his notebook.

5

The Wilsons want to spend their holiday in Turkey this summer. They've seen an advert in the newspaper for a cottage at Turunç Bay near Marmaris. They decide to write to the owner, Mrs Fazilet Avci.

a) Complete the letter with the correct **prepositions + gerund** of the given verbs.

receive find take swim learn

Dear Mrs Avci,

We saw your advert in the paper yesterday, and are interested (1) _____ more about the cottage and the surrounding area. We are thinking (2) _____ our holiday from the 10th of July to the 30th.

We are a family of four. Because we are all very keen (3) _____, perhaps you could let us know how far the cottage is from the beach. Has the cottage got a garage? If not, please let us know whether we would have any difficulty (4) _____ a parking space outside the cottage for the car we intend to hire.

We look forward (5) _____ more information about prices, etc.

Yours sincerely,
Janette Wilson

b) Now Mrs Avci writes a reply to the Wilsons.

Complete her letter in the same way: a suitable **preposition + gerund** of the verbs given.

be hear swim do participate spend park

Dear Mrs Wilson,

Thank you for your letter. I'm pleased you are interested (1) _____ your holiday at Turunç Bay. The cottage is beautifully furnished, with television, modern gas cooker, refrigerator, air-conditioning and a large bathroom with constant hot water. The beach is ideal (2) _____. In spite (3) _____ in a quiet position, the cottage is only a five-minute walk from the beach. The bay is suitable (4) _____ such sports as windsurfing, waterskiing and parasailing. And Marmaris is only a fifteen-minute drive from Turunç, if you are keen (5) _____ in the lively night life of the town. You needn't worry (6) _____ your car — there's plenty of room in front of the cottage.

The price is £200 per week — this includes electricity and gas. I look forward (7) _____ from you again, and hope you will decide to take the cottage.

Yours sincerely,
Fazilet Avci

6

Complete the sentences using the verbs in the box as in the example. Pay attention to the verb form.

admit	avoid	can't help	can't stand	consider
deny	stop	✓ finish	keep	(not) mind
practise	quit	suggest	postpone	

eg: After I had finished reading (read) the book, I lent it to my friend.

- 1- Everybody _____ (talk) while the Professor was lecturing, so he got very annoyed and left the room.
- 2- The youths _____ (steal) the car, but they strongly _____ (knock) over an old woman during the night.
- 3- A lot of British tourists come to stay in that hotel during the summer, so, if you get this temporary job there, you can _____ (speak) English with them.
- 4- I _____ (feel) sorry whenever I see a woman beggar holding a young child in her arms, very often, half-naked.
- 5- They were _____ (hold) a huge party for their twentieth wedding anniversary, but they had to _____ (celebrate) it to a later date as their daughter was suddenly taken ill.
- 6- I _____ (go) out for a walk after you have cleaned your room.
- 7- My father has put on lots of weight since he _____ (smoke).
- 8- I _____ (listen) to Susan! She's always telling lies about everything!
- 9- _____ (use) a metal spoon in your non-stick pan, or you'll scratch it.
- 10- Will you please _____ (make) so much noise? I can't concentrate on my work.
- 11- I _____ (do) most chores in the house, but I really hate ironing.

Study the box.

Infinitives

a) **After certain adjectives and nouns:**

It is **difficult to find** a good job.

His ambition to become the top student in the class has affected his health badly.

b) **After question words:**

Have you decided **what to buy** your mum for her birthday?

c) After certain verbs:

1- Verb + infinitive

<i>afford</i>	<i>decide</i>	<i>learn</i>	<i>promise</i>
<i>agree</i>	<i>demand</i>	<i>manage</i>	<i>refuse</i>
<i>appear</i>	<i>deserve</i>	<i>mean</i>	<i>seem</i>
<i>arrange</i>	<i>fail</i>	<i>offer</i>	<i>struggle</i>
<i>choose</i>	<i>hesitate</i>	<i>plan</i>	<i>threaten</i>
<i>claim</i>	<i>hope</i>	<i>prepare</i>	<i>volunteer</i>

I **can't afford to go** on holiday this summer.
We **decided not to go** out.

2- Verb + noun/pronoun + infinitive

<i>advise</i>	<i>enable</i>	<i>motivate</i>	<i>require</i>
<i>allow</i>	<i>encourage</i>	<i>order</i>	<i>show ... how</i>
<i>appoint</i>	<i>forbid</i>	<i>permit</i>	<i>teach</i>
<i>cause</i>	<i>force</i>	<i>persuade</i>	<i>tell</i>
<i>challenge</i>	<i>hire</i>	<i>remind</i>	<i>urge</i>
<i>convince</i>	<i>invite</i>	<i>request</i>	<i>warn</i>

The doctor **advised me to give** up smoking.
I **warned the children not to play** with matches.

3- Verb + infinitive or Verb + noun/pronoun + infinitive

<i>ask</i>	<i>expect</i>	<i>want</i>	<i>wish</i>	<i>would like</i>
------------	---------------	-------------	-------------	-------------------

I'd like to stay here a little longer.
I'd like **you** to stay here a little longer.

7 Complete the following sentences with **to do** or **doing**.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1- I encouraged him _____ it. | 16- He doesn't want _____ it. |
| 2- She enjoys _____ it. | 17- She dislikes _____ it. |
| 3- She doesn't allow me _____ it. | 18- I didn't mean _____ it. |
| 4- I suggested _____ it. | 19- I convinced them _____ it. |
| 5- She doesn't mind _____ it. | 20- He admitted _____ it. |
| 6- I can't stand _____ it. | 21- She can't help _____ it. |
| 7- I wish _____ it. | 22- We arranged _____ it. |
| 8- They agreed _____ it. | 23- They threatened _____ it. |
| 9- He promised _____ it. | 24- We finished _____ it. |
| 10- We avoid _____ it. | 25- They discussed _____ it. |
| 11- He couldn't afford _____ it. | 26- I hope _____ it. |
| 12- He showed me how _____ it. | 27- You chose _____ it. |
| 13- They denied _____ it. | 28- She kept _____ it. |
| 14- We're considering _____ it. | 29- We miss _____ it. |
| 15- I challenged him _____ it. | 30- She volunteered _____ it. |

Study the box.

Gerund or Infinitive

a) **With no or little change in meaning:**

<i>like</i>	<i>hate</i>	<i>begin</i>	<i>can't bear</i>
<i>love</i>	<i>continue</i>	<i>start</i>	<i>intend</i>

I **intended to stay** at home./I **intended staying** at home.
It **started to rain** when I left home./It **started raining** when I left home.

Note: *begin, start, continue* and *intend* are followed by an infinitive if they are used with a progressive tense.

It **was starting to rain** when I left school. (not *raining*)

b) **With an important change in meaning:**

remember to do / remember doing

I **remember meeting** that man before, but I can't remember where.
(First: I met him. Then: I remembered it.)
— Did you **remember to post** my letter? (First: I remembered. Then: I posted it.)
— Oh, yes. I posted it.

forget to do / forget doing

I **forgot to post** your letter. (I forgot about it, so I didn't do it.)
I'll never **forget meeting** him. (I did something now, and I won't forget that I did it.)

try to do / try doing

I **tried to catch** the bus, but I couldn't. (I made an effort to catch it.)
I had a terrible headache. I **tried taking** an aspirin, but it didn't help.
(I did something to see if it would help solve the problem.)

need to do I **need to clean** my room.
need doing = need to be done My room **needs cleaning/needs to be cleaned.**

8

Complete the sentences with the gerund or infinitive form of the verbs in parentheses. Both are possible in some of them.

- 1- A: I hope you didn't forget _____ (*turn*) off the heating!
B: No, I remembered _____ (*switch*) it off just as I was leaving.
- 2- A: I'm trying _____ (*put*) this book on the top shelf, but I'm afraid I can't reach.
B: Well, why don't you try _____ (*stand*) on a chair?
- 3- A: Here's the book you lent me two weeks ago.
B: Did I? That's strange! I don't remember _____ (*lend*) it to you.
- 4- A: Tom, remember _____ (*buy*) a loaf of bread while you're at the shops, will you?
B: OK, Mum.
- 5- A: Oh, look! It's beginning _____ (*pour*) with rain. We can't go swimming in this weather.
B: Why not? I love _____ (*swim*) when it's raining.
- 6- I told the children _____ (*keep*) quiet, but they continued _____ (*make*) a lot of noise.
- 7- I can't bear _____ (*listen*) to the music you're playing. It drives me crazy!
- 8- I like _____ (*get*) up early in the morning. Then I can have breakfast without hurrying.
- 9- A: Your hair needs _____ (*cut*), Jim.
B: Yes, I know. I need _____ (*go*) to the barber, but I'm so busy these days.
- 10- David intends _____ (*travel*) round the world before he starts _____ (*study*) for his degree.

9

Complete the sentences with the *gerund* or *infinitive* form of the verbs in parentheses.

- 1- A: It's really hot in here.
B: Well, try _____ (*open*) the window. That might cool the room down a bit.
- 2- The windows need _____ (*clean*). Shall I do them this afternoon?
- 3- I clearly remember _____ (*lock*) the door, but I've completely forgotten where I put the key afterwards.
- 4- We encouraged her _____ (*apply*) for the job even though she didn't think she'd get it.
- 5- I've arranged _____ (*pick up*) the tickets on Friday afternoon.
- 6- The workers risk _____ (*lose*) their jobs if they go ahead with the strike action they've planned for next week.
- 7- At the meeting, the managers discussed _____ (*open*) a new branch, but they couldn't reach an agreement.
- 8- The students appear _____ (*be*) very happy with their new teacher.
- 9- A: What would you like _____ (*do*) on your birthday?
B: I don't know. I haven't thought about it yet.
- 10- She usually likes _____ (*talk*) to each of her students about what they'll do when they leave school.
- 11- I wouldn't mind _____ (*stay*) in town during the holiday, but the children will be unhappy.
- 12- I love fish, but I can't bear _____ (*touch*) the raw flesh, so I only ever eat it when someone else has cooked it.
- 13- Although they played well throughout the tournament, they failed _____ (*qualify*) for a place in the finals.
- 14- I urged him _____ (*take*) more care, but he just wouldn't listen to me.
- 15- Since I started this job, I've really missed _____ (*have*) enough time for my hobbies.
- 16- I hesitated _____ (*answer*) his question because I wasn't certain that I knew the answer.
- 17- She had to learn _____ (*cook*) when she was quite young because her mother was ill in hospital for several months.
- 18- If you've finished _____ (*write*) your essay, can you help me with my maths, please?
- 19- We've decided _____ (*not, go*) on holiday this year as we're saving for a car.
- 20- No one is permitted _____ (*enter*) the building while the conference is in progress.
- 21- I promised _____ (*babysit*) for my sister tonight, so I can't come out with you, I'm afraid.
- 22- I didn't mean _____ (*shout*) at her, but I was so angry that I couldn't stop myself.
- 23- He claimed _____ (*not, know*) what I was talking about, but I'm sure he was lying.
- 24- He admitted _____ (*take*) the watch, but denied _____ (*steal*) the money.
- 25- She keeps _____ (*ask*) me the same question, but I really don't know the answer.

10

Complete the sentences with the *gerund* or *infinitive* form of the verbs in parentheses. Add a preposition where necessary.

- 1- She nearly caused an accident because she crossed the road without _____ (*look*).
- 2- After what he said yesterday, I have no wish _____ (*see*) him again.
- 3- Inline skating is not only fun _____ (*do*), it's also quite inexpensive.
- 4- I had thought that the play would be really boring, but I was surprised _____ (*find*) that I really enjoyed it.
- 5- She was disappointed _____ (*not, pass*) the exam as she studied so hard for it.
- 6- He worried so much _____ (*take*) his driving test that, on the day, he was ill.
- 7- A: Was he successful _____ (*get*) more people to come on the demonstration?
B: No, not really.
- 8- Although the situation was serious, I couldn't help _____ (*laugh*) at the mess we were in.
- 9- My parents don't let me _____ (*invite*) anyone that they haven't met before to the house.
- 10- Can you help me _____ (*choose*) a birthday present for my uncle? I have no idea what _____ (*get*) him.
- 11- I'll allow you _____ (*borrow*) the car tomorrow as long as you put some more petrol in it.
- 12- You might not like this dish if you aren't used _____ (*eat*) spicy food.
- 13- Instead _____ (*go*) by bus, why don't we hire a car and drive there ourselves?
- 14- The child was determined _____ (*have*) the toy car he saw in the window, so he didn't stop _____ (*cry*) until he got it.
- 15- It's important _____ (*defrost*) a frozen chicken fully before you cook it.
- 16- It's dangerous _____ (*turn*) the lights on if you can smell gas.
- 17- You shouldn't blame John _____ (*lose*) the money. He wasn't responsible for it.
- 18- A: Are you ready _____ (*leave*) yet?
B: Nearly.
- 19- A: Are you looking forward _____ (*see*) your cousins again next week?
B: Yes, of course. I haven't seen them for over a year.
- 20- These days, it's impossible _____ (*find*) good quality clothes that aren't too expensive.
- 21- He earned the money he needed for university by _____ (*work*) as a waiter in the evenings and at weekends.
- 22- If we can't find a suitable hotel in the town, how about _____ (*hire*) a caravan for the week?
- 23- I'm really excited _____ (*fly*) for the first time next week, but I'm a little nervous, too.
- 24- It's a good idea _____ (*reserve*) the tickets in advance because the trains get really busy at weekends.
- 25- She didn't let her children _____ (*stay*) up late that night because they'd been so naughty during the day.

UNIT 10

Causatives

Study the box.

have

a) have someone do something

Sometimes we do not do certain jobs ourselves. Instead, we arrange someone else to do them for us.

A: I'm busy here in the garden, but I'm starving. **Have Mum make** some sandwiches for us.

B: OK, Dad.

b) have something done

Usually it is not necessary to mention the person who does the job. Therefore, the "**have + object + past participle**" form is used.

A: Oh, what a lovely skirt! Did you make it yourself?

B: No, I **had it made**.

1

Say whether members of your family **do** the following things **themselves** or **have them done** by other people.

eg: wash the car
service the car

My father washes the car himself.

We have our car serviced by a mechanic.

- 1- clean the house
- 2- cut my nails
- 3- repair broken windows
- 4- paint the house
- 5- cook the meals
- 6- repair a bicycle puncture
- 7- do the shopping
- 8- fix the roof
- 9- brush my hair
- 10- cut my hair
- 11- mend old shoes
- 12- fix a leaking pipe

2

The Wilsons have made some changes in their house recently. Mrs Brown, who has just returned from a visit to the Wilsons, is telling her husband about the changes.

eg: They have had a new heating system installed. (a new heating system/install)

- 1- They _____ in their back garden. (a swimming-pool/build)
- 2- They _____ . (all the window frames/change)
- 3- They _____ in the garden for Mr Wilson. (a workshop/construct)
- 4- They _____ around the garden. (a wooden fence/put up)
- 5- They _____ into a room for their elder son. (the attic/convert)
- 6- They _____ in the living room. (a fireplace/build)

3

The youth club building in town is very old and urgently in need of repair, but the club can't afford to pay for all of the repairs, so the members have to do some of the work themselves, and will have the rest done for them. Here's the list Peter, the leader of the club, has prepared. He's marked the jobs they'll do themselves and stated who will do what.

THINGS TO BE DONE

Repair the roof

Mend the fence — Keith

Put in larger windows

Paint the window frames and the doors — Sam

Install new heating

Check electric wiring — George

Lay a new fitted carpet

Make new curtains and tablecloths — Susan

Fit new cupboards in the kitchen

Hang new wallpaper — Julia and me

Repair the television

Make a new notice-board — Frank

a) Keith, a member of the club, sees the list on the wall, and talks to Peter about it.

Keith: Hey, Peter, we're not going to do all those jobs ourselves, are we?

Peter: No, of course not. We're going to have some of them done for us.

1- We're going to have the roof repaired, but you yourself can mend the fence.

2- _____

3- _____

4- _____

5- _____

6- _____

b) After the members have finished the work, Peter's friend Helen visits the club.

Complete the dialogue between Peter and Helen using the same verbs in the list.

Helen: The roof has been repaired very well. (1) Did you repair it yourselves?

Peter: No, we (2) had it repaired for us.

Helen: The fence was terrible the last time I was here, but it looks nice now. (3) _____ you _____ for you?

Peter: No, Keith (4) _____ himself.

Helen: Oh, the windows look larger. (5) _____ you _____ yourselves?

Peter: No, we (6) _____ for us, but Sam (7) _____ herself.

Helen: But you can't have installed the heating yourselves!

Peter: Of course not. We (8) _____ for us, but George (9) _____ himself.

Helen: Sounds interesting! And how about the carpet?

Peter: We (10) _____, but Susan (11) _____ herself.

Helen: How nice! What about the kitchen cupboards and the wallpaper?

Peter: Well, we (12) _____, but Julia and I (13) _____ ourselves.

Helen: Oh, you've done an excellent job! What other changes have you made?

Peter: We (14) _____, and Frank (15) _____.

Study the box.

get

a) get someone to do something (active)

"**get**", which is more commonly used in speech, can be used in the same way as "**have**", but often, it has the meaning of "*persuade someone to do something for you*".

I'll **get my mother to make** a huge cake for Simon's birthday.
Jerry **got his sister to do** his literature assignment.

b) get something done

I'll **get a huge cake made** (by my mother) for Simon's birthday.
Jerry **got his literature assignment done** by his sister.

- 4** a) Jerry is a very lazy boy, but also very clever, so he usually succeeds in persuading people to do things for him. He is going to a party at the weekend, and he has a lot of things to do, but he won't do them himself.

Complete the sentences with **to + a verb** from the list.

wash iron write tidy polish pick up

- 1- I won't have time to do my homework, but no problem. I'll get Tim _____ an essay for my literature teacher.
- 2- I'll get my mother _____ my jeans. She can get them nice and clean.
- 3- I want to wear my blue shirt, but it is creased. Well, I can get Lucy _____ it for me.
- 4- And my shoes! They look dirty, but I'm sure I can get little Susie _____ them for me.
- 5- Oh, it may be cold out in the garden, so I'll need my jacket, but it's at the dry-cleaner's. No problem. I'll get my father _____ it _____ on his way back home.
- 6- And the last thing. My room is in a mess. I think I can get Jim _____ it for me.

- b) Somehow, Jerry was able to persuade everyone to do what he wanted.

Make sentences using the "**get + object + past participle**" form.

- | | |
|---------------|----------------------------------|
| 1- his essay | <u>He got his essay written.</u> |
| 2- his jeans | _____ |
| 3- his shirt | _____ |
| 4- his shoes | _____ |
| 5- his jacket | _____ |
| 6- his room | _____ |

c) **PAIR WORK:** Work with your partner and make short dialogues as in the example.

Jerry had promised to do something for each person mentioned above, but he didn't keep his promises. Now they're complaining about it. Here are his promises. Decide what he might have promised to whom.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <input type="radio"/> do the shopping for you for a week | <input checked="" type="radio"/> help you during the maths exam |
| <input type="radio"/> wash the car for you next weekend | <input type="radio"/> buy you two bars of candy |
| <input type="radio"/> not tell Mum that you're still going out with James | <input type="radio"/> allow you to use my scooter |

Tim: Jerry, you won't get me to do anything for you again.

Jerry: But why not, Tim?

Tim: Well, you had promised to help me during the maths exam, but you didn't help me yesterday.

Jerry: But, Tim! The teacher was looking in our direction all the time. I'll help you next time.

Tim: You won't change my mind. You won't get me to help you again.

Go on with the others, but be careful not to be taken in by Jerry any more!

5

How can you persuade the following people to do something for you?

eg: You want your mother to buy you a new pair of jeans, but she seems a bit reluctant.

I can get my mother to buy me a new pair of jeans by promising to study harder at school/by nagging until she gets them/etc. _____

1- You want your brother to help you with your English assignment.

2- You want your sister to clean your room.

3- You want your father to take you on a picnic, but he says that he is very tired.

4- You want to give a party, but your mother won't let you. She says that the house will get too dirty.

5- You want to go to a summer school in England, but you know that your parents can't afford it. You want your grandmother, who has got a lot of money, to meet the expense.

6- You're going away for the weekend, and you want your next door neighbour, who is not very fond of dogs, to look after your dog.

Study the box.

make

a) make someone do something

"make" is used in the same way as **have** and **get**, but often, it gives the meaning of *"force someone to do something"*.

Usually, parents **make their children go** to bed early if there is school the next day.
Some teachers **make their students do** a lot of homework.

b) "make" is also used in sentences like:

The film was very sad, and it **made me cry**.
His joke **made all of us laugh**.

6

Helen thinks that her parents are very strict because they always make her do things that she doesn't want to do.

Make sentences about Helen as in the example: one with **"let"** and one with **"make"**.

eg: stay up late/go to bed early
They don't let her stay up late. They make her go to bed very early. _____

- 1- watch horror or science-fiction films/watch children's programmes only

- 2- go out whenever she wants/finish her homework first

- 3- read comics/read serious books instead

- 4- wear mini skirts or leggings/wear long skirts or loose trousers

- 5- eat many sweet things/eat "healthy" foods all the time

- 6- go to discos at weekends/go to the cinema or theatre with them

7

Now Helen promises that she won't be a strict parent when she becomes a mother herself.

Make sentences as in the example.

eg: go to bed early/stay up late
I won't make my children go to bed early. I'll let them stay up late. _____

- 1- watch the boring children's programmes/watch whatever they like

- 2- do their homework before anything else/do it whenever they like

- 3- read the books I choose/read whatever they like

- 4- wear the clothes I want/wear whatever they like

- 5- eat "healthy" foods all the time/eat sweet things as well

- 6- come to the cinema or theatre with me/entertain themselves however they like

SUMMARY OF CAUSATIVE VERBS

Active	Passive
have someone do something	have something done
get someone to do something	get something done
make someone do something	_____

8 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the verbs in parentheses: base form (**do**), to + verb (**to do**) or past participle (**done**).

- 1- I can't afford to buy a new dress for my graduation ball, but I think I can get my mother _____ (make) one for me.
- 2- We had our car _____ (fit) with an alarm.
- 3- Her illness made Amy _____ (stay) at home while the others went swimming.
- 4- Did you paint the house yourself, or did you have it _____ (paint)?
- 5- Somehow, Terry got Jane _____ (lend) him her car. She doesn't usually let anyone _____ (use) it, you know.
- 6- **A:** Will you do your hair yourself for the wedding?
B: No, I'll get it _____ (do) at a hairdresser's.
- 7- **A:** What will you bring for the picnic, Jeff?
B: I'll get my mother _____ (make) some cookies for us.
- 8- **A:** Can you read the number plate of that car? I'm afraid I can't.
B: Yes, very clearly. I think you should have your eyes _____ (test).
- 9- **A:** Who will look after the children while you are away?
B: Well, I think I'll have my mother _____ (stay) with them over the weekend.
- 10- **A:** No, Tim. It's out of the question. I won't let you _____ (go) out to play football in this weather.
B: But, Mum, it's not fair! None of my friends' parents make them _____ (stay) at home at weekends!
- 11- Stop struggling with the leak, Mike. I'll have my brother, who is a plumber, _____ (mend) it properly.
- 12- **A:** Will you let me _____ (borrow) your black shirt for the party?
B: Yes, if you promise to get it _____ (clean) before you give it back.
- 13- Because most of the students got very low marks, the teacher made them _____ (retake) the exam.
- 14- **A:** Do you think we could get the teacher _____ (let) us _____ (leave) a little before the bell today?
B: I don't know, but we'll try.

REVISION TEST 2

- 1- I won't be able to join you until later because I'm having my hair _____ this afternoon.
- A) perm B) permed
C) to perm D) perming
- 2- You water the plants for _____. That's why some of them are dying.
- A) often enough B) not very often
C) so often D) too often
- 3- The windows _____ open three times so far this week. Please be more careful when you _____ up at night.
- A) are leaving/lock
B) have been left/are locking
C) are left/have locked
D) have been leaving/are locked
- 4- I don't want to listen to his _____ any longer. Please tell him to be quiet!
- A) complain B) to complain
C) complaining D) complained
- 5- A: How did Mark find out about the trip? I didn't tell him.
B: Well, he _____ us talking about it. His office is right next to mine, isn't it?
- A) used to overhear
B) may overhear
C) should have overheard
D) could have overheard
- 6- You _____ on holiday, you know. You're tiring yourself out with all this work.
- A) might have gone
B) should go
C) used to go
D) would have gone
- 7- He was talking _____ everyone in the office could hear him.
- A) louder than B) too loud
C) so loudly that D) loudly enough
- 8- I wanted _____ the gold watch I found, but my mother made me _____ it in to the police.
- A) keeping/to hand B) to keep/hand
C) kept/handing D) keep/handed
- 9- The factory _____ to help pay off the company's debts.
- A) sells B) is selling
C) has sold D) will be sold
- 10- The junior staff _____ to next week's reception because there _____ enough room for them.
- A) aren't being invited/won't be
B) don't invite/isn't
C) hadn't been invited/hadn't been
D) haven't invited/wasn't
- 11- _____ is one of my favourite sports, but I'm not very keen on _____.
- A) To swim/to dive B) Swim/dived
C) Swimming/diving D) Swam/dive
- 12- I _____ playing computer games, but now I find them really boring.
- A) used to enjoy
B) can enjoy
C) should have enjoyed
D) would have enjoyed
- 13- I'm really surprised _____ you here. Mike told me you weren't going to come.
- A) to see B) see
C) seeing D) saw

14- When I _____ to the shop, the assistant _____ just _____ the last loaf of bread.

- A) get/has ... sold
- B) have got/is ... selling
- C) am getting/will ... sell
- D) got/had ... sold

15- I couldn't get the video _____, so I couldn't record that film.

- A) worked
- B) work
- C) to work
- D) have worked

16- He has _____ stamp-collection I've ever seen. It fills up nearly an entire room.

- A) more amazed
- B) such an amazing
- C) as amazed as
- D) the most amazing

17- They _____, so they _____ into the hotel restaurant with their wet things on.

- A) had been swimming/weren't allowed
- B) swam/didn't allow
- C) are swimming/don't allow
- D) will swim/haven't been allowed

18- My mother refuses _____ me _____ on the trip alone.

- A) let/to go
- B) to let/go
- C) letting/going
- D) let/went

19- She _____ here for ten years and she _____ once _____ a day off sick.

- A) worked/isn't ... having
- B) is working/hasn't ... been having
- C) was working/won't ... have
- D) has been working/ hasn't ... had

20- We'll have to get the house _____ this year because it's looking really shabby now.

- A) redecorated
- B) redecorate
- C) redecorating
- D) to redecorate

21- You _____ at him like that. He didn't mean to break the cup you know.

- A) shouldn't have shouted
- B) weren't able to shout
- C) wouldn't shout
- D) might not have shouted

22- The children were _____ about the trip to the zoo the next day that they couldn't get to sleep.

- A) such exciting
- B) so excited
- C) too excited
- D) more exciting

23- This skirt isn't _____ for me to wear to work. Can I try something else on, please?

- A) so long
- B) longer
- C) long enough
- D) too long

24- They had _____ relationship _____ I don't think they ever had even one quarrel.

- A) a closer/than
- B) so closely/as
- C) too closely/for
- D) such a close/that

25- We _____ that the door _____ open until almost midday.

- A) didn't notice/had been forced
- B) aren't noticed/is forcing
- C) don't notice/will be forced
- D) hadn't been noticed/was forced

26- It _____ obvious that she _____ because of the redness of her eyes.

- A) is/cries
- B) was/had been crying
- C) has been/had cried
- D) had been/has been crying

27- The boss made her _____ one hour's overtime yesterday because she was five minutes late back from lunch.

- A) to work
- B) working
- C) work
- D) worked

28- I think they were _____ with their results _____ they said.

- A) the most disappointed/of
- B) too disappointing/to
- C) such a disappointing/that
- D) more disappointed/than

29- According to today's weather forecast, it _____ really hot over the next couple of days.

- A) is going to get
- B) has been getting
- C) was getting
- D) had got

30- It's quite difficult _____ the exam, so you will have to spend most of your free time _____ this year.

- A) pass/to study
- B) passing/studied
- C) to pass/studying
- D) passed/study

31- Yesterday Terry didn't listen to his mother's advice and went out in a thin sweat-shirt, and now he is ill in bed. He _____ on his coat.

- A) had put
- B) should have put
- C) must have put
- D) was putting

32- Please don't go into the kitchen. I've _____ washed the floor.

- A) since
- B) just
- C) still
- D) ever

33- We _____ about one hundred replies to our advertisement so far, but we _____ a lot more.

- A) have had/are expecting
- B) are having/have expected
- C) had/ were expecting
- D) have/will expect

34- We can't leave the office because the manager hasn't returned from his meeting _____.

- A) since
- B) still
- C) yet
- D) ever

35- A: _____ you lend me some money?
B: No, sorry because I haven't got very much myself.

- A) Should
- B) Can
- C) Must
- D) Do

36- I missed my usual train yesterday, so I _____ a taxi to work.

- A) should take
- B) must have taken
- C) had to take
- D) might have taken

37- You _____ come with us tomorrow if you don't want to.

- A) shouldn't have
- B) didn't need to
- C) can't have
- D) don't have to

38- You can use the computer whenever you like without _____ my permission first.

- A) asking
- B) to ask
- C) ask
- D) asked

39- It's _____ that John has offered to help us with the preparations. He is normally so lazy.

- A) to surprise
- B) surprising
- C) surprised
- D) is surprised

40- I was _____ by the teacher's explanation that I had to study everything again.

- A) too confusing
- B) such a confused
- C) as confusing
- D) so confused

TEST YOUR VOCABULARY

- 1- It is very important to use the correct _____ when you make a dish from a cookery book.
- A) recipes B) receipts
C) ingredients D) lists
- 2- If I had a dark room, I'd _____ my holiday photographs myself.
- A) film B) take
C) project D) develop
- 3- A: Did you _____ to get to work on time yesterday?
B: Yes, because I took a taxi.
- A) remember B) manage
C) win D) lose
- 4- The _____ in the apartment block were all upset because the owner had increased their rent too much.
- A) tenants B) landlords
C) neighbours D) customers
- 5- Luckily the child was only slightly _____ when he fell off the swing.
- A) damaged B) injured
C) destroyed D) broken
- 6- If you don't brush your teeth _____, one day you'll lose them.
- A) readily B) eagerly
C) regularly D) certainly
- 7- You must _____ eating fatty food and stop smoking if you don't want to have another heart attack.
- A) prevent B) reject
C) ignore D) avoid
- 8- It was raining so heavily that I got _____ while I was waiting for the bus.
- A) drowned B) flooded
C) bored D) soaked
- 9- My team is going to win the match. They are _____ 2-0 and there are only 3 minutes left to play.
- A) losing B) running
C) leading D) scoring
- 10- It's been raining _____ for three days.
- A) lazily B) steadily
C) silently D) finally
- 11- I was _____ for my English exam when suddenly the lights went out.
- A) composing B) commenting
C) remaining D) revising
- 12- Scientists all around the world are working hard to find a/an _____ for AIDS.
- A) cure B) repair
C) enemy D) effect
- 13- I lost my bracelet because it was too big and it fell off my _____.
- A) neck B) chest
C) wrist D) ankle
- 14- Because trains usually run behind schedule, they are not very _____, so I have to take the bus to work.
- A) reliable B) clean
C) strong D) affordable

15- I was surprised to see that my finger was _____ because I hadn't realised that I'd cut myself.

- A) aching B) breaking
C) bleeding D) recovering

16- The audience must have enjoyed the play because they _____ for fifteen minutes.

- A) handed B) advised
C) applauded D) explained

17- As soon as she came out, the famous pop star was surrounded by her _____, trying to get signed pictures of her.

- A) creatures B) admirers
C) rivals D) colleagues

18- We have a little time before the _____ of the train. Shall we go and drink something in the meantime?

- A) take-off B) destination
C) run-away D) departure

19- I don't understand why he looks so _____ ? There is really nothing for him to be unhappy about.

- A) miserable B) pleased
C) exciting D) confusing

20- Do you know why Tom has been acting so _____ recently? It's really puzzling me!

- A) obviously B) suddenly
C) strangely D) constantly

21- I know I _____ you a lot of money. I promise to pay you back as soon as I get paid next Friday.

- A) owe B) own
C) possess D) belong

22- While we were _____ in the garden, we unearthed a small box full of old coins.

- A) watching B) digging
C) lying D) diving

23- When her grandmother died, she _____ a collection of very valuable silverware.

- A) mourned B) admitted
C) lived D) inherited

24- I thought Jack would be interested in our plan, but he wasn't. He seemed totally _____.

- A) optimistic B) realistic
C) indifferent D) enthusiastic

25- Terry was disqualified from the exam yesterday because he was _____ cheating.

- A) avoided B) caught
C) prevented D) missed

UNIT 11

DEFINING RELATIVE CLAUSES

Subject Position

For people: *who/that*

I know **the girl**. **She** won first prize in the art competition.

I know the girl **who/that** won first prize in the art competition.

The girl is my cousin. **She** won first prize in the art competition.

The girl **who/that** won first prize in the art competition is my cousin.

For animals and things: *which/that*

I lost the **bracelet**. **It** was a present from my grandmother.

I lost the bracelet **which/that** was a present from my grandmother.

The bracelet was very valuable. **It** was a present from my grandmother.

The bracelet **which/that** was a present from my grandmother was very valuable.

1 Combine the two sentences using the **second sentence** as a relative clause.

eg: Sally bought a picture. It had been painted by an unknown artist.

Sally bought a picture **which/that** had been painted by an unknown artist.

1- The teacher is nice. She teaches us science.

2- I thanked the man. He rescued my cat from the hole.

3- The car had to be towed away. It crashed into the lamp-post.

4- The cows suddenly got frightened and began to run. They were in the field next to our house.

5- I like those people. They express their opinions freely.

6- Films shouldn't include scenes of violence. They are shown during children's viewing hours.

7- The lorry broke down on the way. It was carrying our furniture.

8- The zoo-keeper shouted at the children. They were trying to feed the lions.

Object Position

For people: *who/whom/that/∅ (nothing)*

Did I tell you about **the boy**? I met **him** at Lucy's party.
 Did I tell you about the boy **who/whom/that/∅** I met at Lucy's party?

The boy was very handsome. I met **him** at Lucy's party.
 The boy **who/whom/that/∅** I met at Lucy's party was very handsome.

For animals and things: *which/that/∅ (nothing)*

Have you finished **the book**? I gave **it** to you last week.
 Have you finished the book **which/that/∅** I gave you last week?

The book is interesting, isn't it? I gave **it** to you last week.
 The book **which/that/∅** I gave you last week is interesting, isn't it?

2

Combine the two sentences using the **second sentence** as a relative clause. Decide whether the relative clause is in the *subject* or *object* position and give all the possible forms.

eg: The food was excellent. It was served at the party.

The food **which/that** was served at the party was excellent.

The food was excellent. They served it at the party.

The food **which/that/∅** they served at the party was excellent.

- 1- The bread is very stale. I bought it at the baker's just an hour ago.

- 2- I really like the bread. It's baked by my mother.

- 3- The woman was a journalist. She was knocked down by a lorry yesterday.

- 4- I must send a thank-you letter to the people. I stayed with them during the conference.

- 5- Do you know the girl? I was talking to her just now.

- 6- Do you remember the name of the film? We watched it together last Saturday.

- 7- Will you go to see the play? It's going to be staged by the local theatre.

- 8- I can't stand the girl. I share my dormitory room with her.

Defining a place: *where*

I always lock **the drawer**. I keep my jewellery **in that drawer**.
I always lock the drawer **where** I keep my jewellery.

The drawer is very safe. I keep my jewellery **in that drawer**.
The drawer **where** I keep my jewellery is very safe.

3 Combine the two sentences using the **second sentence** as a relative clause. Pay attention to whether the noun you're defining is a *subject*, *object* or *adverb of place* in the relative clause. Give all the possible forms.

- 1- The house is very big. Judy has just rented it.

- 2- The balcony gets very dirty. My husband feeds the pigeons there.

- 3- A cemetery is a place. The dead are buried there.

- 4- The cemetery is very well-kept. It's just opposite our house.

- 5- I didn't like the house. The estate agent showed it to us this morning.

- 6- The house is in Selonica. Atatürk was born there.

- 7- What are the names of the countries? They occupied Turkey after the First World War.

- 8- The USA is a country. The population is made up of all nationalities there.

- 9- Spain is the country. I'd like to see it most.

- 10- The room is on the third floor. The meeting is going to be held there.

- 11- The room is not very big. We're using it as a bedroom for our guests.

- 12- A huge number of policemen have been positioned around the square. The demonstration is going to be held there.

Showing possession (for people, animals and things): *whose*

The woman is very happy. **Her** son got the highest grade in the university exam.
The woman **whose** son got the highest grade in the university exam is very happy.

I like the old **Italian couple**. I stayed at **their** house last summer.
I like the old Italian couple **whose** house I stayed at last summer.

Can you repair **the chair**? **Its** legs are broken.
Can you repair the chair **whose** legs are broken?

4

Combine the two sentences using the **second sentence** as a relative clause. Pay attention to whether the noun you're defining is a *subject*, *object*, *possessive adjective* or *adverb of place* in the relative clause. Give all the possible forms.

1- That's the man. His car was stolen by the bank robbers.

2- Do you recognize the woman? She is walking towards us.

3- I've put your bank book in the cupboard. I keep all my important belongings there.

4- The shoes don't look very good quality to me. They are in the shop window.

5- I can't remember the name of the woman. I met her at Suzie's party.

6- What's the name of the politician? Her son is a professional footballer.

7- I'll use the cup. It's next to the kitchen sink.

8- I haven't seen the film. Everybody is talking about it at the moment.

9- I took the jacket to be repaired. Its sleeve was torn.

10- Let's go to the restaurant. We went there with Kathy and Marcus.

11- I hope we don't see the shop assistant. I had an argument with her yesterday.

12- I'd like to visit the city one day. My father was born there.

5

Circle the right answer. There may be more than one answer in some of them.

- 1- I feel sorry for the man ____ daughter was killed in a car accident.
- A) who B) whom
C) whose D) Ø
- 2- The teacher _____ asks the most difficult questions in our school is our maths teacher.
- A) Ø B) whom
C) who D) that
- 3- I rescued the cat _____ head had got stuck between the bars of the railings.
- A) that B) which
C) where D) whose
- 4- The money _____ we need to have our car repaired seems to be difficult to find.
- A) whom B) that
C) which D) Ø
- 5- The train ____ is coming from Ankara is about to arrive at the station.
- A) Ø B) where
C) whose D) that
- 6- The company _____ my husband works is not in a good situation financially these days.
- A) that B) Ø
C) where D) which
- 7- I know a small restaurant ____ serves good food at a reasonable price.
- A) which B) where
C) whose D) who
- 8- Jack London is the author _____ books I enjoy reading most.
- A) that B) whose
C) which D) Ø
- 9- The only person _____ I can trust in the office is Helen.
- A) Ø B) where
C) whose D) which
- 10- A person _____ is very famous is usually not easy to contact.
- A) who B) where
C) that D) whom
- 11- The necklace _____ my mother gave me for my birthday is lovely.
- A) Ø B) which
C) whose D) who
- 12- I wouldn't like to be a person _____ fame is worldwide because I wouldn't be able to do whatever I wanted then.
- A) whose B) where
C) who D) which
- 13- Do you think it is possible to find a politician _____ has never told a lie?
- A) Ø B) that
C) who D) whom
- 14- The part of a hospital _____ seriously ill patients are looked after is called the Intensive Care Unit.
- A) which B) where
C) Ø D) whose

UNIT 12

NON-DEFINING RELATIVE CLAUSES

- ☛ A **defining** relative clause is necessary to identify the noun. Without it, we can't understand which person, thing, etc. is meant.
- ☛ A **non-defining** relative clause is not necessary to identify the noun. The listener already knows which person, thing, etc. is meant, so the clause only gives additional information.

Defining: *The girl* is in our class. **She** is sitting in the corner.
The girl **who** is sitting in the corner is in our class.

Non-defining: *My mother* spends most of her time at the shops. **She** likes shopping very much.
My mother, **who** likes shopping very much, spends most of her time at the shops.

- ☛ Because it gives additional information, a non-defining relative clause is separated from the rest of the sentence with commas.

Jim's grandfather, **who is over seventy years old**, walks three miles every day.
Give these documents to Mrs Silver, **who will need them before the meeting**.

- ☛ The relative pronoun "**that**" is not used in non-defining clauses. Other relative pronouns — *who, whom, which, whose* and *where* — are used.

The children **who/that** were playing in the park seemed so happy.
Our children, **who** are playing in the park at the moment, are sometimes very naughty.

The car **which/that** is parked in front of our house belongs to the Smiths.
The Smiths' car, **which** is parked in front of our house at the moment, keeps breaking down.

The place **where** we go on holiday this summer shouldn't be very expensive.
Marmaris, **where** we'll spend our holiday this summer, is not as crowded as Bodrum.

- ☛ Object pronouns may be omitted in defining clauses, but they cannot be omitted in non-defining clauses.

The dress **that/which/Ø** I bought yesterday is made of silk.
This dress, **which** I bought yesterday, is made of silk.

The person **who/whom/that/Ø** I wanted to talk to was not there.
Mr Green, **who/whom** I wanted to talk to, was not there.

1

Circle the right answer. There are more than one right answer in some of them.

- 1- The shop _____ I bought this jumper has closed down.
 A) that B) where
 C) whose D) Ø
- 2- Where have you put the vase _____ is normally on this shelf?
 A) Ø B) where
 C) who D) that
- 3- I'm just writing a letter to Linda, _____ I met when I was in Spain last year.
 A) that B) whom
 C) who D) Ø
- 4- I've invited Mr and Mrs Patterson, _____ son used to go to school with my daughter, to come with us next week.
 A) who B) that
 C) which D) whose
- 5- You didn't enjoy the film _____ we saw last night very much, did you?
 A) Ø B) where
 C) whose D) who
- 6- I'd rather go to the new shopping-centre, _____ we can park the car easily, than into town.
 A) that B) Ø
 C) where D) which
- 7- They gave the waiter _____ served them an enormous tip because he was so polite and efficient.
 A) which B) whom
 C) whose D) who
- 8- Our hall carpet, _____ we've had since we got married, still looks as good as new.
 A) that B) which
 C) whose D) Ø
- 9- We didn't like the wallpaper _____ was in the living room, so we redecorated.
 A) which B) where
 C) that D) Ø
- 10- The guide _____ we had on our tour wasn't very informative and didn't smile once.
 A) who B) where
 C) that D) whom
- 11- She lost the earrings _____ she got for her birthday after only one week.
 A) Ø B) where
 C) whose D) who
- 12- Is it possible to speak to the woman _____ I saw yesterday, please?
 A) Ø B) where
 C) who D) which
- 13- The politician _____ daughter was arrested last week has just resigned.
 A) Ø B) that
 C) who D) whose
- 14- The doctor _____ I normally see is on holiday this week.
 A) which B) where
 C) Ø D) whose
- 15- I wore my grey suit, _____ is more comfortable than my black one, to the interview.
 A) Ø B) which
 C) where D) that
- 16- The players of our team, _____ have been celebrating their victory all day, are giving a press conference this evening.
 A) whom B) which
 C) who D) that

2

Find the relative clauses in the following sentences and decide whether they are **defining** or **non-defining**. Add commas where necessary. Replace the pronoun with "that" if possible.

eg: The athlete who couldn't jump over the hurdle was disqualified from the race.

(defining: ... who couldn't jump over the hurdle .../ no commas are used / "that" can be used instead of "who")

Mary who was able to jump over every hurdle successfully won the race.

(non-defining: ... ,who was able to jump over every hurdle successfully, .../ commas are necessary / "that" cannot be used instead of "who")

- 1- Mr Weekes who owns our local shop is getting married next week.
- 2- The place where I'd like to retire is a small town by the sea.
- 3- It must be difficult to find accommodation in Tokyo which is said to be the most crowded city in the world.
- 4- The house which we rent should have at least four rooms.
- 5- Our manager who gives great importance to punctuality was himself late for work three times last week.
- 6- You can take this map which you may need during your journey round the country with you.
- 7- Only the people who have an invitation will be allowed into the conference room.
- 8- Matthew and Joan who didn't have an invitation weren't allowed into the conference.
- 9- The villagers whose houses were flooded during the rainstorm spent the night with neighbours.
- 10- The Town Hall whose roof was damaged during the hurricane cannot be used at the moment.
- 11- The students who have passed the exam are smiling, but the ones who haven't are sulking.
- 12- All the employees in the marketing department whom the management will award with a large bonus because of their recent success will be present at the reception.

3

Complete the sentences with the correct relative pronouns: **that, who, whom, which, whose, where**. There may be more than one answer in some of them.

- 1- The flowers _____ I'd bought for my mother had all wilted by the time I got home.
- 2- The florist said we should put this plant in front of the window, _____ it can get more sunlight.
- 3- Turkey, _____ is surrounded by sea on three sides, is a popular tourist destination.
- 4- The cakes _____ my mother makes are much tastier than shop-bought cakes.
- 5- The person _____ you should consult about your problem is Mrs Wilson.
- 6- Mrs Wilson, _____ I consulted about my problem, gave me some good advice.
- 7- I think Martin is the only person _____ can help you with your maths assignment.
- 8- Martin, _____ helped me with my maths assignment, asked me to go out with him in return.

4

Combine the two sentences using the **second sentence** as a relative clause. Decide whether you need a **defining** or **non-defining** clause, and add commas where necessary.

- 1- We climbed to the top of the hill. We got a wonderful view of the city there.

- 2- Our headmaster is retiring next week. His wife is Head of Maths.

- 3- What do you call the person? He arranges funerals.

- 4- The people are very friendly. I've been teaching their son since last year.

- 5- We don't really like our personnel manager. He came here from our London branch.

- 6- My watch doesn't keep very good time these days. My parents gave it to me years ago.

- 7- I'd like to introduce you to Michelle. I play tennis with her at the weekends.

- 8- When I retire, I want to settle in a town. There is no pollution and no traffic there.

- 9- I've always wanted to go to Venice. There are no roads, but only canals, there.

- 10- Why don't we sit in the front living room? We've just had it redecorated.

- 11- We managed to sell our old car. Its doors were so rusty that we could hardly open them.

- 12- The bus is a Number 10 B. It goes direct to the centre from our house.

- 13- I took the children to the park in Rose Avenue. They had a lovely time playing on the swings there.

- 14- Amanda is coming for dinner tonight. Her husband is away on business at the moment.

- 15- The apple tree at the bottom of our garden always looks beautiful in spring. It was there when we bought the house.

- 16- The vegetables are always fresh. They are sold at our local greengrocer's.

5

OUR SOLAR SYSTEM

Do you know the order of the planets in our solar system according to their distance from the sun?

Complete the first sentences with the names of the planets. Then combine the sentences using the second sentence as a relative clause.

Uranus
Saturn

Jupiter
Venus

Mercury
Pluto

Earth
Neptune

Mars

- 1- _____ is the closest planet to the sun. It has a rocky surface.
Mercury, which has a rocky surface, is the closest planet to the sun. _____

- 2- _____ is the second planet from the sun. It has been visited by several space probes.

- 3- _____ is the third planet from the sun. It is the only planet known to be the home of living things.

- 4- _____ is the fourth planet from the sun. It's also called "the Red Planet" because of its orange or red surface.

- 5- _____ is the fifth planet from the sun. It's the largest planet in the solar system.

- 6- _____ is the sixth planet from the sun. It's the second largest planet and has at least twenty known moons.

- 7- _____ is the seventh planet from the sun. It was first observed by Sir William Herschel through a telescope on 13th March, 1781.

- 8- _____ is the eighth planet from the sun. It appears blue because of methane in its upper atmosphere.

- 9- _____ is the most distant planet from the sun. It is known to be the smallest planet.

6

Combine the following sentences using the **second sentence** as a relative clause. Pay attention to the use of commas.



STEP BY STEP INDEPENDENCE WAR

- 1- The German and Austrian empires lost the First World War. The Ottoman State had supported them.

The German and Austrian empires, which the Ottoman State had supported, lost the First World War.

- 2- So, the Allied Forces occupied Turkey. They won the war.
-

- 3- The Ottoman State couldn't stop them. It had become weak because of the wars.
-

- 4- Mustafa Kemal opposed the government's decision to surrender. He knew that the Turkish nation wanted to live independently.
-
-

- 5- He decided to go to Anatolia and unite the people. They were fighting the enemy, but they were not organized.
-

- 6- On 16th May, 1919, he left Istanbul on the Bandırma Boat. She was going to take him to Samsun.
-

- 7- From Samsun, he went to Erzurum and Sivas. There, he held meetings with delegates from other cities.
-

- 8- The delegates decided to form a new government in Ankara. They agreed to fight the enemy.
-

9- So, on 27th December, 1919, Mustafa Kemal went to Ankara. There, he was enthusiastically met with great jubilation.

10- The Grand National Assembly of Turkey chose Mustafa Kemal as their president. It held its first session on April 23rd, 1920.

11- They also formed a government. The government immediately started the preparations for war.

12- Turkish soldiers drove out the Allied Forces. They fought bravely under the leadership of the Chief Commander Mustafa Kemal.

13- This war was called the Independence War. It lasted four years.

14- Our enemies signed the Treaty of Lausanne. It determined our present borders and recognized our independence.

15- On 29th October, 1923, the National Assembly declared the republic. It abolished sultanate.

16- Then Atatürk concentrated on developing his country and made a number of reforms in many areas, such as the system of justice, and measurements, clothing and education. His aim was to create a modern Turkey.

17- But, without doubt, his most important reform was the introduction of secularism. It gave Turkey its national identity.

18- Today, every Turk must know that he owes a lot to this GREAT soldier and statesman. He fought and worked for his country and nation throughout his life.

UNIT 13

NOUN CLAUSES

- ☛ A noun clause is used in the same way as a noun.

I know Peter's **address**. (address: a noun)

I know **where Peter lives**. (where Peter lives: a noun clause)

- ☛ Noun clauses can be introduced in three ways.

1. With **question words**

A: **Why** is Lucy so sad?

B: I don't know **why she is so sad**.

2. With "**whether ... (or not)**" or "**if ... (or not)**"

A: Does Mary live close to her work?

B: I have no idea **whether/if** she lives close to her work (**or not**).

3. With "**that**"

A: Sally has been promoted.

B: I know **that she has been promoted**.

Note: Question word order is not used in a noun clause. The subject comes before the verb.

A: **When did Mark** arrive?

B: I don't know **when he arrived**.

If the question word is the subject of the sentence, the word order remains the same in the noun clause.

A: **Who is** coming with us?

B: I don't know **who is** coming with us.

1

ORAL: Change the question to a noun clause. Begin your sentence with "**Do you know ?**"

eg: What did Jane buy for her mother?

Do you know what Jane bought for her mother?

- 1- What has Mary decided to do?
- 2- Is Mike interested in football?
- 3- Do we have to hand in this assignment tomorrow?
- 4- Where does she keep her jewellery?
- 5- What happened here yesterday?
- 6- What is the time?
- 7- What time is it?
- 8- Will the party be held on Friday evening?
- 9- Can she handle this problem on her own?

- 10- Who is that girl?
- 11- Whose car is that?
- 12- Will they serve food at the reception?
- 13- How many people have applied so far?
- 14- Is he good at persuading people?
- 15- When are your parents coming back from holiday?
- 16- Did Michael pass his driving test?
- 17- Does this bus go to the centre?
- 18- How did she get that job?
- 19- How high is Mount Everest?
- 20- What is the height of Mount Everest?

2**Change the question to a noun clause.**

Asking direct questions is sometimes not very polite, especially when you are in formal environments. Using a noun clause sounds politer. You can start your sentences like these:

Could I possibly ask ... / May I ask ...

Can you (please) tell me ... / Could you (please) tell me ...

eg: What time is the next train?

Could you please tell me what time the next train is? _____

1- Which platform does the train to Ankara leave from?

2- Are children allowed into the conference room?

3- How can I get to the post office?

4- What were my mistakes in the exam?

5- Is the film suitable for children under seven?

6- Who should I see about this problem?

7- When will the manager be back?

8- Did the manager deal with my case yesterday?

9- Are the banks going to be open on the eve of "bayram"?

10- What time does the conference start?

11- How long does it normally take to get a visa for the USA?

12- Which diseases do I have to be vaccinated against before I leave?

13- Have you received my application letter?

14- When will the results be made public?

3

Ask questions for the words in parentheses. Then change the questions to noun clauses.

eg: That car belongs to (*my uncle.*)

A: *Who does that car belong to?* _____

B: I really don't know *who that car belongs to.* _____

1- David was late for the meeting (*because he overslept.*)

A: _____

B: I have no idea _____

2- (*The yellow*) coat is Susan's.

A: _____

B: I don't know _____

3- She got that promotion (*by working very hard.*)

A: _____

B: I haven't got the slightest idea _____

4- (*James*) volunteered to bring the drinks for the picnic.

A: _____

B: I haven't heard _____

5- Veronica is going out with (*Daniel.*)

A: _____

B: Why do you want to know _____

6- The manager sent (*Peter*) to represent the company at the conference.

A: _____

B: I'm afraid I don't know _____

7- Alice and Jake usually go to the cinema (*twice a week.*)

A: _____

B: Why are you interested in finding out _____

8- She went (*to the disco*) without her parents' permission.

A: _____

B: I don't know _____

9- (*Mrs James'*) daughter won first prize in the competition.

A: _____

B: I haven't yet found out _____

10- This road is (*six metres*) wide.

A: _____

B: Why do you want to know _____

4

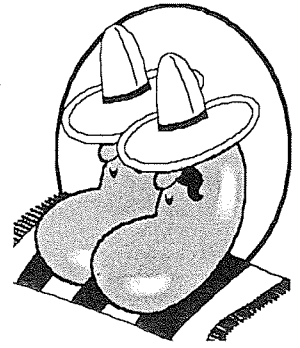
Choose the right answer.

- 1- I can't decide _____ I should buy a tie for him or a shirt.
A) what B) whether
C) when D) who
- 2- Do you know _____ room the meeting is going to be held in?
A) what B) where
C) who D) which
- 3- I don't know _____ my dictionary is. Can I use yours?
A) which B) how
C) where D) whose
- 4- I don't know _____ this dictionary is, but I'm afraid I'll have to use it without asking.
A) who B) where
C) which D) whose
- 5- Do you know _____ this dictionary belongs to? I need to use it, but I want to ask permission first.
A) who B) where
C) whose D) how
- 6- We haven't yet decided _____ we'll stay on holiday, but I don't think it will be more than two weeks.
A) when B) how often
C) how long D) what time
- 7- She didn't tell me _____ the film would start, so I was a bit late and missed the beginning.
A) how long B) what time
C) where D) how often
- 8- I wonder _____ she managed to finish her homework in such a short time. She went to her room just ten minutes ago!
A) where B) what
C) when D) how
- 9- I wanted to find out _____ she went to the cinema with, but she wouldn't tell me.
A) how B) where
C) who D) when
- 10- I don't know exactly _____ the distance between Istanbul and Ankara is, but it must be around 400 km.
A) where B) what
C) how D) which
- 11- She can't decide _____ of her suits she should wear to the interview.
A) what B) how many
C) whose D) which
- 12- I have to find out _____ high Mount Ararat is as I need it for my geography assignment.
A) what B) where
C) how D) which
- 13- Mum is furious and she is determined to find out _____ broke her favourite vase.
A) what B) whose
C) who D) which
- 14- If she finds out _____ of us did it, I'm sure she'll punish him.
A) which B) how
C) what D) who
- 15- I don't know exactly _____ people there were at the demonstration, but it was really very crowded.
A) how much B) how long
C) how far D) how many
- 16- Do you know _____ she paid for that silly dress? \$250!
A) how long B) how often
C) how much D) how many
- 17- I can't tell you _____ I can join you for the theatre next Saturday as yet because I may be out of town on a business trip then.
A) where B) why
C) how D) if
- 18- I wonder _____ Mum will like the present I bought for her.
A) whether B) what
C) whose D) why

5

Make sentences about the numbered sentences as in the examples.

MEXICO, THE LAND OF "AMIGOS"



(1) Mexico is the largest Spanish-speaking country in the world. (2) It extends from the 14th to the 32nd parallel north of the equator in the south of North America. (3) The United States borders Mexico on the north, Guatemala and Belize are on the southeast, the Gulf of Mexico and the Caribbean Sea on the east, and the Pacific Ocean on the west and south. (4) The name is taken from the Mexica, one of seven Nahuatl tribes that inhabit the central highland. (5) Mexico was ruled as a colony for more than 300 years and (6) gained independence on October 4, 1824.

Mexico is mostly mountainous. (7) The volcano Orizaba is Mexico's highest mountain, (8) with a height of 5,747 m. (9) Mexico's climate is hot and humid in the southern coastal areas but becomes very arid toward the north.

Mexico has great biological diversity, and (10) its widely distributed wildlife include deer, coyote, rabbits, pumas, bears, snakes, and many species of birds. Tropical areas are inhabited by armadillos, iguanas, tapirs, monkeys, macaws, parrots, crocodiles, and snakes.

(11) Mexico has abundant petroleum resources. This makes it the fifth-leading exporter of oil in the world. Natural gas, sulfur, and salt are found with the petroleum deposits. Other important minerals are coal and iron ore. Mexico is also the world's leading exporter of silver and an important producer of gold, copper, lead, manganese, zinc, mercury, fluorite, and salt. (12) Lands suitable for farming are only about 15% of the total area, and (13) forests cover 25% of the land.

From only about 15 million people in 1910, Mexico's population grew to 34 million in 1960, more than 69 million in 1980, and (14) 92,000,000 in 1994. With an annual rate of natural increase of 1.9%, the population is projected to grow to 109,480,000 by the year 2000 and 118,445,000 by 2010. Mexico is a highly urbanized country, with (15) 71% of the people living in cities and towns. (16) Mexico City is the nation's largest city as well as the capital. So many people have moved into the metropolitan area that it has become the world's largest city, (17) with a population of 22.2 million in 1990.

Intensive adult education programs were begun in the 1970s to decrease illiteracy, and today, (18) 87% of the population is literate. (19) Of the more than 50 major daily newspapers that are published in Mexico, about 30% have their headquarters in the Mexico City area. (20) Over 100 television stations and several hundred radio stations are now broadcasting in the country.

1- This sentence tells us which language is spoken in Mexico.

2- From this sentence, we learn where the country is.

- 3- _____
- 4- _____
- 5- _____
- 6- _____
- 7- _____
- 8- _____
- 9- _____
- 10- _____
- 11- _____
- 12- _____
- 13- _____
- 14- _____
- 15- _____
- 16- _____
- 17- _____
- 18- _____
- 19- _____
- 20- _____

NOUN CLAUSES WHICH BEGIN WITH "THAT"

A **"that clause"** is used after certain *verbs*, *nouns* or *adjectives* to express an idea or a fact. "That" can be omitted, and the meaning doesn't change.

1. After certain verbs

The earth goes round the sun.
We all **know (that) the earth goes round the sun.**

2. After certain nouns

He survived that terrible accident.
It's **a wonder that he survived that terrible accident.**

3. After certain adjectives

It's **amazing that he survived that terrible accident.**
I'm **certain that you'll be able to pass the exam.**

6

ORAL: Express your feelings or ideas about the statements below. Use the verbs given in the list. You can use a negative verb if you need.

I admit/believe/doubt/expect/fear/hope/promise/suppose/think
It seems (to me)/appears (to me) It doesn't seem/It doesn't appear

eg: People are cruelly destroying the earth.
I agree that people are cruelly destroying the earth.

Turkey will be a developed nation soon.
I don't think that Turkey will be a developed nation soon.

- 1- Our national football team will win the World Cup one day.
- 2- The economic situation of the country may get worse.
- 3- Scientists will find a cure for cancer.
- 4- The earth's natural resources will run out in the near future.
- 5- We'll have to return to a primitive way of life.
- 6- People have so far been very wasteful with the earth's resources.
- 7- I won't be wasteful with natural resources from now on.
- 8- Rapid population growth is the world's biggest problem.
- 9- Man does more harm to himself than natural disasters do.
- 10- People will realise this and change their attitudes.
- 11- Life in big cities is getting more and more stressful.
- 12- The cost of living increases people's stress.

7

ORAL: Change the following sentences to noun clauses using a suitable expression from the list. Pay attention to whether the sentence should begin with **"It's"** or **"I'm"**

adjectives

<i>true</i>	<i>obvious</i>
<i>certain</i>	<i>sure</i>
<i>strange</i>	<i>surprising</i>
<i>surprised</i>	<i>pleased</i>
<i>glad</i>	<i>sorry</i>
<i>unfortunate</i>	<i>unbelievable</i>

nouns

<i>a fact</i>	<i>a miracle</i>
<i>a wonder</i>	<i>a relief</i>
<i>a pity</i>	<i>a shame</i>
<i>(my) belief</i>	<i>(my) theory</i>
<i>(my) impression</i>	

eg: I passed all my exams.
I'm glad that I passed all my exams.

Michael can't come to the party.
It's a pity that Michael can't come to the party.

- 1- She fell from the sixth floor but wasn't killed.
- 2- Human beings have caused certain species of animals to become extinct.
- 3- Water boils at 100° C and freezes at 0° C.
- 4- We won't have any classes tomorrow because the teacher is ill.
- 5- He passed his exams without studying at all.
- 6- There will be a big disaster on Earth and it will balance population growth.
- 7- The efforts of environmentalists will bring good results.
- 8- Money doesn't bring happiness.
- 9- Wood floats in water, but iron sinks.
- 10- He survived the plane crash while all the other passengers were killed.
- 11- Developed nations spend a huge amount of money on arms while people die from hunger in Africa.
- 12- The operation has been successfully performed.
- 13- I hurt you with my inconsiderate remarks.
- 14- That pop group will be famous worldwide.
- 15- Unemployment will increase.
- 16- He killed the woman and stole her jewellery. A number of people saw him there at the time.
- 17- After so much hard work, she failed the exam.
- 18- The summer holiday is drawing near.
- 19- Women don't have the same rights in society as men.
- 20- The storm caused a lot of damage to the crops.

UNIT 14

CONDITIONALS

☛ Conditional 1: real situations

The "if clause" expresses a condition in the present or future, and the main clause expresses the possible result.

It **may rain** tomorrow. Then the match **will be cancelled**.
If it **rains** tomorrow, the match **will be cancelled**.

☛ Conditional 2: unreal in the present or future

In this type, we imagine the opposite of a present or future situation and state a result according to that condition.

She **doesn't know** English, so she **won't apply** for that job.
If she **knew** English, she **would apply** for that job.

☛ Conditional 3: unreal in the past

In this type, we imagine the opposite of a past action and state a result according to that condition.

It **rained** heavily all day yesterday, so I **stayed** at home.
If it **hadn't rained** heavily all day yesterday, I **wouldn't have stayed** at home.

1

State a suitable result for the following conditions.

a) Conditional 1

eg: If Mary doesn't apologise to me, *I'll never speak to her again.* _____

- 1- If Mum sees the mess you've made, _____
- 2- If Dad gets a pay-rise soon, _____
- 3- If I can persuade my parents, _____
- 4- If you don't visit your granny tomorrow, _____

b) Conditional 2

- 5- If there were no wars on Earth, _____
- 6- If Dad earned more money, _____
- 7- If I didn't have to go to school tomorrow, _____
- 8- If people could fly, _____

c) Conditional 3

- 9- If I hadn't stayed up late last night, _____
- 10- If Jerry hadn't left the tap on, _____
- 11- If you had walked carefully on the ice, _____
- 12- If you had washed this jumper in lukewarm water, _____

BASIC VERB FORMS IN CONDITIONALS

	If clause	Main (result) clause
Conditional 1	simple present can have to	simple present (do, does) simple future (will) have to, will have to can, will be able to may, might
Conditional 2	simple past could had to	would could, would be able to would have to might
Conditional 3	past perfect had been able to had had to	would have done could have done might have done

2

Complete the sentences using the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

eg: If I were you, I wouldn't invite (not, invite) Sam to my party.

- 1- If someone _____ (call) me while I'm out, can you take a message for me?
- 2- It's so uncomfortable travelling on public transport. I would buy a small car if I _____ (have) some money.
- 3- You _____ (not, get bored) at home if you'd come to the cinema with us.
- 4- If you'd set your alarm clock, you _____ (not, be) late for the interview.
- 5- I would help you with the cleaning if I _____ (not, have to) do my homework now.
- 6- Istanbul would be a wonderful place to live in if it _____ (not, be) so noisy.
- 7- Sally _____ (earn) more if she gets a promotion.
- 8- He _____ (have) more friends if he didn't boast about himself all the time.
- 9- If the weather _____ (be) warmer, we'd have enjoyed our holiday better.
- 10- You don't have to come to the exhibition with us if you _____ (not, be) interested in abstract art.
- 11- If you _____ (tell) me that June was coming, I'd have prepared some vegetarian food for her.
- 12- He _____ (not, have) an accident if he'd been more careful.
- 13- If it _____ (be) sunny and warm tomorrow, shall we go for a walk along the seashore?
- 14- You'll definitely catch a cold if you _____ (go) out without putting on your coat.
- 15- They _____ (employ) him if he had the right qualifications.
- 16- I _____ (pay) for the meal if I'd had enough money on me.
- 17- We would have had better seats if we _____ (book) our tickets well in advance.
- 18- Susan will be discouraged if she _____ (not, get) the job she applied for.

3

Write the conditional sentences for the given real situations.

eg: I don't have any money, so I'll have to spend the weekend at home.

If I had some money, I wouldn't have to spend the weekend at home.

1- I have to study for my maths exam, so I can't watch the film on TV.

2- Dad may be free next Saturday. Then we can ask him to take us on a picnic.

3- You missed the train because you got up late.

4- He makes a lot of silly mistakes in exams because he doesn't take sufficient care.

5- She caught a cold because she went out without putting on her raincoat.

6- The boss may dismiss you because you keep coming to work late.

7- She won't pass her driving test because she is too nervous.

8- We don't know Frank's address, so we can't visit him during our stay in Paris.

9- Phil may get a promotion in June. Then he'll change his car.

10- She didn't call the fire brigade immediately, so the fire got very big.

11- Mr Eames never gives money to charities because he is very mean.

12- No one helped Peter with the project, so he had to work until midnight.

13- You can't get the job because you can't speak Japanese.

14- You didn't get the car serviced before the journey, so it broke down on the way.

15- I won't lend him any money because he never pays his debts on time.

4

Make sentences as in the example.

A Chain of Accidents

(1) The sausages in the butcher's shop smelt so nice that the little dog ran across the street in heavy traffic. (2) The driver of the bus had to step on the brakes very quickly. (3) The lorry behind hit the bus. (4) Its load of bananas was scattered all over the street. (5) An old lady stepped on a banana. (6) She fell and broke her leg. (7) A cyclist was startled by the noise. (8) He fell off his bike in front of a car. (9) The driver of the car had to swerve sharply to avoid hitting the cyclist. (10) He drove into the butcher's shop window. (11) All the sausages fell out of the window, so, in the end, (12) the little dog was able to eat lots of sausages.

(1) *If the sausages in the butcher's shop hadn't smelt so nice, the little dog wouldn't have run across the street in heavy traffic.* _____

(2) *If the little dog hadn't run across the street in heavy traffic, the driver of the bus wouldn't have stepped on the brakes so quickly.* _____

(3) _____

(4) _____

(5) _____

(6) _____

(7) _____

(8) _____

(9) _____

(10) _____

(11) _____

(12) _____

WISH CLAUSES

☛ **A wish in the present or future**

We use **wish** when we are not happy with the real situation and want it to be just the opposite.

I **won't be able to meet** you tomorrow.

I wish I **could meet** you tomorrow.

Mary **lives** a long way from her work.

Mary wishes she **lived** closer to her work.

☛ **A wish in the past**

A **wish** in the past means that we are not happy about something we did in the past. We regret doing it.

I **didn't study** hard for the exam and I failed it.

I wish I **had studied** hard for the exam.

☛ **If only** can be used instead of **wish**, but **if only** is stronger, and it can be followed by a result clause.

If only I didn't have an exam tomorrow.

If only I had studied hard for my exam, I wouldn't have failed it.

BASIC VERB FORMS IN WISH CLAUSES

In the present or future	In the past
simple past could didn't have to (had to)	past perfect could have done, had been able to hadn't had to (had had to)

5

Say what things you wish were different about the following people or things.

eg: exams

I wish there were no exams.

your house

I wish our house were (was) bigger.

1- your room

2- your appearance

3- your parents

4- your sister/brother (a relative)

5- the town you live in

6- your country

7- the world

- 6** There are lots of things in Gary's life that he's not happy about, so he always complains about them. Write his wishes.

eg: He has to get up early for his work. *He wishes he didn't have to get up early for his work.*

- 1- He doesn't have a car. _____
- 2- He didn't get a promotion last year. _____
- 3- He is very forgetful. _____
- 4- He forgot to phone his mother on her birthday. _____
- 5- He couldn't go on holiday last year. _____
- 6- He won't be able to go on holiday this year. _____
- 7- He can't go out very often. _____
- 8- He didn't study engineering at university. _____
- 9- Yesterday he didn't have time to visit his grandfather. _____

- 7** Complete the sentences using the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

- 1- I'm going to clean the house tomorrow. I wish you _____ (*can, help*) me. Then it _____ (*not, take*) me so long.
- 2- I was late for class yesterday, so I missed the first lesson. I wish I _____ (*take*) an earlier train. Then I _____ (*not, be*) late for class.
- 3- I sometimes wish I _____ (*be*) born a hundred years ago.
- 4- Henry drove through a red light yesterday, so he had to pay a fine. He wishes he _____ (*notice*) the red light. Then he _____ (*not, have to*) pay a fine.
- 5- Jake has to go on a two-week business trip, but he is very worried because his wife is expecting a baby. He wishes he _____ (*not, have to*) go on this trip. Then she _____ (*not, have to*) stay alone for so long.
- 6- Veronica has an attractive face, but she is a little short and overweight. She wishes she _____ (*be*) a bit taller and slimmer. Then she _____ (*be able to*) enter the beauty contest.
- 7- Scientists have been searching for a cure for cancer for years, but they haven't found one yet. I wish there _____ (*be*) an effective cure for cancer. Then people _____ (*not, die*) of the illness.
- 8- Mr Pitt kept his savings under his pillow, so all of it was stolen when his house was broken into, so now he wishes he _____ (*put*) the money in a bank. Then he _____ (*not, have*) all his money stolen.
- 9- We didn't listen to the interior designer's advice and had our living room painted a dark colour, but now, we are not happy with it. We really wish we _____ (*choose*) a lighter shade. Then the room _____ (*look*) much brighter.

8 Say whether you are happy or unhappy about the following things, using a wish clause. Then suggest a suitable result.

eg: *The atom-bomb was invented.*

*I wish the atom-bomb hadn't been invented. Then so many people wouldn't have been killed in Hiroshima and Nagasaki because of it.
(or ... because it killed so many people in)*

People invented the aeroplane.

I'm glad that people invented the aeroplane, so we are now able to travel very long distances in a short time.

1- There are wars in the world.

2- Nations spend an enormous amount of money on weapons.

3- Atatürk made a lot of reforms after the Independence War.

4- He introduced secularism to the country.

5- People have cleared away large areas of forest for farming and grazing land.

6- In our country, students have to take an exam to get a place at university.

7- Natural disasters occur all over the world.

9 a) No one is perfect, so you must have certain characteristics that you don't like. Write three of them and the undesirable results they cause.

eg: *I really wish I weren't so quick-tempered because it makes me hurt people unnecessarily.*

- 1- _____
- 2- _____
- 3- _____

b) You must have made some mistakes in the past. Write three of them, with the undesirable results they caused.

eg: *I wish I hadn't lied to my mother because she realised and lost her trust in me.*

- 1- _____
- 2- _____
- 3- _____

JUST FOR FUN

Jack's wife always used to grumble at him, so at last, one Saturday afternoon, Jack decided to leave her. Just as he was opening the front door, his wife said, "Where are you going?"

"I'm going to watch Leeds United," he answered and walked down the path and out into the street.

Ten years later Jack arrived back home.

"Well, have you got anything to say?" asked his wife.

"They lost 3-2," replied Jack.

"Well, I wish you'd been a bit faster coming home," she said. "Your tea's gone cold."

UNIT 15

CONNECTORS and CONJUNCTIONS

REVISION

1

Complete the sentences with **and**, **but**, **or**, **so** or **because**.

- 1- My father always drives the car slowly _____ carefully.
- 2- My mother, on the other hand, is very reckless, _____, strangely enough, she hasn't had any accidents so far.
- 3- My sister is going to attend university in Ankara. She is going to stay in a dormitory, _____ rent a flat if she can find a suitable flatmate.
- 4- I'm afraid I can't go to work tomorrow _____ I'm not feeling very well.
- 5- The manager, _____ the secretary, said that we were having the monthly meeting at the headquarters, _____ I can't remember which.
- 6- I thought their house was too far from the station to walk, _____ I took a taxi.
- 7- The mission was very important _____ secret, _____ he didn't even tell his wife anything about it.
- 8- We had to leave the party in a hurry _____ we only had five minutes to catch the last bus home.

2

Choose the right answer.

- 1- You have to be persistent, (*so/or*) you won't achieve anything in life.
- 2- (*Either/Both*) we get better conditions (*and/or*) we'll all resign.
- 3- Our health is the most important thing we have. (*Neither/Either*) money (*or/nor*) a career is as important.
- 4- She left home in a hurry (*while/after*) she'd made a phone call to her mother.
- 5- I would like my flatmate a lot better (*if/when*) she were a little tidier.
- 6- (*Until/As soon as*) the manager came in, we all understood that there was something wrong.
- 7- I'm afraid we can't replace our car (*until/because*) I find a better-paid job.
- 8- My parents never let me go out (*if/unless*) I've finished all my homework.
- 9- (*After/Just as*) we were leaving home, some friends came round.
- 10- (*The more/As soon as*) we tried to dissuade her from her decision, (*the sooner/the more*) obstinate she became.
- 11- Rapunzel's hair was (*more/so*) long (*than/that*) her lover could use it to climb up the tower.
- 12- (*While/When*) the guests arrived, Mum had finished all the cooking.

3

Combine the sentences using the words in parentheses.

- 1- The book was interesting. I couldn't put it down. *(so ... that)*

- 2- I enjoy travelling overseas. I wouldn't even consider settling in another country. *(but)*

- 3- I saw them. They had just finished decorating the room. *(when)*

- 4- I always brush my teeth. Then I go to bed. *(before)*

- 5- My brother enjoys all kinds of water sports. So do I. *(both ... and)*

- 6- There was very little demand for the tickets. They cancelled the concert. *(so)*

- 7- She telephoned me last night. She invited me to a concert. *(and)*

- 8- He doesn't really like opera. I doubt that he'll want to come with us. *(because)*

- 9- I won't see him again. He gets back from holiday next month. *(until)*

- 10- I was doing the washing-up. I cut my finger on a knife. *(while)*

- 11- He has a huge selection of books. I'm sure he can't have read all of them. *(such ... that)*

- 12- We finished work. Immediately, we rushed to the beach for a quick swim. *(as soon as)*

- 13- The play we saw wasn't well-written. It wasn't well-acted, either. *(neither ... nor)*

- 14- The painting she did was brilliant. It's not surprising that she won first prize in the competition. *(because)*

- 15- A book will make a good present for Mike. So will a computer game. *(either ... or)*

Study the box.

although/because

Although states an unexpected result.

It was rainy. We went on our picnic.

Although it was rainy, we went on our picnic.

Because states an expected result.

It was rainy. We didn't go on our picnic.

Because it was rainy, we didn't go on our picnic.

4

Complete the sentences with **because** or **although**.

- 1- Lucy failed her final exams _____ she didn't study hard for them.
- 2- Mark passed all of them _____ he didn't study at all.
- 3- Her cold got worse _____ she took her medicine regularly and took great care of herself.
- 4- It took Jeff more than a week to get rid of his cold _____ he didn't take good care of himself.
- 5- Isn't it strange? _____ the prices in that shop are extremely high, it's always full of customers!
- 6- I really want to buy that dress _____ the price is reasonably cheap.
- 7- _____ Phil hadn't organised his trip with enough care, a lot of things went wrong.

5

Combine the sentences using **because** or **although**.

- 1- She didn't get the job. She wasn't well-qualified enough.

- 2- We missed the train. We still managed to get to the meeting on time.

- 3- She gets ill very frequently. She's very careful about what she eats and what she does.

- 4- I'd really like to do something for him. He was so kind to me in the past.

- 5- He didn't win the match. He played brilliantly.

- 6- No one survived the car crash. The two cars collided with great force.

- 7- There was a power-cut. The video didn't record the film I wanted to see.

- 8- She won't actually attend the conference. She is going to help us with the preparations.

Study the box.

In spite of gives the same meaning as *although*, but the structure is different.

although + a clause (a subject + verb)

in spite of + a noun/pronoun

It was raining heavily. Susie played in the garden.

Although it was raining heavily, Susie played in the garden.

In spite of the heavy rain, Susie played in the garden.

Because and **because of** have the same meaning, but the structure is different.

because + a clause

because of + a noun/pronoun

I didn't let her play in the garden. It was raining heavily.

I didn't let her play in the garden **because it was raining heavily**.

I didn't let her play in the garden **because of the heavy rain**.

6

Complete the sentences with **although**, **in spite of**, **because** or **because of**.

- 1- _____ he is not a particularly stingy man, he gives very little pocket-money to his children.
- 2- _____ his regular study habit, Mike always gets very low marks in the exams.
- 3- Turkey is a popular holiday destination for European tourists mainly _____ it's sunny and warm.
- 4- _____ its tourist attractions, Pamukkale is always full of visitors.
- 5- _____ man has been cruel to certain species of animals, they are now facing extinction.
- 6- _____ the danger from the flood waters, some of the villagers didn't abandon their houses.
- 7- _____ man's mishandling of the environment for centuries, we are now suffering serious ecological problems.
- 8- The villagers warned the mountaineer not to climb without a guide. _____ this, he decided to do it alone.
- 9- _____ she had plenty of money on her, she didn't lend any to her friend to go out for lunch.
- 10- She is an excellent violinist now _____ she started to play the violin at a very young age.
- 11- The driver of the car was seriously injured _____ he was wearing his seat-belt at the time of the accident.
- 12- _____ the increasing prices, it's becoming more and more difficult to buy even the essentials.

REVISION TEST 3

- 1- If he _____ that tune again, I _____ him!
- A) had whistled/can hit
B) whistles/will hit
C) has whistled/would have hit
D) would whistle/hit
- 2- They jumped into the car _____ drove off at great speed.
- A) because B) before
C) and D) or
- 3- I didn't invite John, _____ isn't very keen on football anyway, because there wasn't room in the car.
- A) that B) whose
C) whom D) who
- 4- _____ we leave, check that there is plenty of petrol in the tank.
- A) While B) Before
C) Although D) Because
- 5- I arrived at the cinema late _____ the heavy rush-hour traffic.
- A) because B) although
C) in spite of D) because of
- 6- If only I _____ at her like that. She'll probably never speak to me again.
- A) couldn't shout B) haven't shouted
C) hadn't shouted D) don't shout
- 7- _____ her great talent in music, she doesn't want to be a musician.
- A) Although B) In spite of
C) Because of D) Because
- 8- The flowers _____ you bought me two weeks ago still look beautiful.
- A) where B) what
C) when D) that
- 9- If I _____ my own computer, I _____ it to do all my homework on.
- A) had/would use
B) could have/used
C) have had/will use
D) will have/could have used
- 10- Are you going on holiday with your parents this year, _____ are they going to let you go away with your friends?
- A) because B) before
C) or D) but
- 11- That's the house _____ my mother was born. Look! The one with the blue door.
- A) where B) that
C) which D) Ø
- 12- She knew she'd be late, _____ she didn't bother to tell anyone.
- A) or B) before
C) but D) while
- 13- There was a fire in Mr Murphy's office _____ you were on holiday last week.
- A) although B) so
C) after D) while
- 14- That jockey, _____ horse fell in a race last week, has won more races this year than any other in the country.
- A) that B) whose
C) whom D) Ø
- 15- I really wish you _____ Sally. I'm sure you'd get on really well together.
- A) could meet B) are meeting
C) can meet D) will meet

16- Let's drive to the shopping-centre, _____ we can park the car and do our shopping without worrying about getting a parking-ticket.

- A) whose B) that
C) when D) where

17- If we _____ a hotel room in advance, we _____ stay in that awful guest house.

- A) had reserved/wouldn't have had to
B) will reserve/might not have to
C) are reserving/wouldn't have to
D) reserved/didn't have to

18- The woman _____ I introduced you to earlier is my mother's cousin.

- A) which B) whose
C) whom D) where

19- Our team lost the match _____ they had more chances to score than their opponents.

- A) because B) although
C) whom D) which

20- Oh, no! I've lost the bracelet _____ my aunt gave me for my birthday.

- A) which B) who
C) whom D) whose

21- I _____ so much earlier if I _____ there was going to be food at the party.

- A) wouldn't have eaten/had known
B) haven't eaten/will know
C) didn't eat/would know
D) won't eat/know

22- She always used to wear an old red jumper _____ colour was so faded that it looked more like pale pink.

- A) that B) which
C) ∅ D) whose

23- A: Have you decided _____ you're going to speak to her?

B: Yes, I've arranged to meet her next Tuesday evening and I'll tell her then.

- A) where B) when
C) what D) who

24- I'm so tired. I really wish today _____ Saturday, then I _____ to school.

- A) had been/won't go
B) is/don't go
C) has been/couldn't have gone
D) were/wouldn't have to go

25- He was really rude to me, _____ I've decided not to speak to him again.

- A) or B) who
C) so D) while

26- The bookshelf, _____ my uncle used to have in his living room, is too big to fit in my bedroom.

- A) which B) that
C) where D) ∅

27- Oh, look at the rain! Right now, I wish I _____ next to a swimming-pool on a tropical island somewhere!

- A) am B) had been
C) would be D) were

28- I couldn't find the book _____ I wanted in the school library. Someone else must have borrowed it.

- A) ∅ B) where
C) what D) whose

29- Do you know _____ the depth of Lake Van is?

- A) how B) where
C) how often D) what

30- I'll give you a ring tomorrow morning _____ I've checked the arrangement with my parents.

- A) so B) after
C) while D) and

UNIT 16

PREPOSITIONS and PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES

1

a) Complete the passage with the correct prepositions.

THE SUNDAY NIGHT TRAIN

A hundred years ago, people who wanted to travel (1) _____ Edinburgh (2) _____ the towns (3) _____ the north-east (4) _____ Scotland had a very unpleasant journey (5) _____ winter. There were no railway bridges (6) _____ the River Forth or the River Tay, and passengers had to change twice (7) _____ a warm train (8) _____ a small cold ferry boat. (9) _____ the end, it was decided to build a bridge (10) _____ the River Tay in order to make the journey quicker and more comfortable. The Tay Bridge was completed (11) _____ 1878. It was the longest (12) _____ the world (13) _____ those days, and (14) _____ the middle, it rose to a hundred feet (15) _____ the water, so that the old tall ships could pass (16) _____ it. Thomas Bouch, the engineer who built it, was made a knight (17) _____ Queen Victoria.

(18) _____ 28th December, 1879, a great storm hit Scotland. The passengers (19) _____ the Sunday night train were glad that they didn't have to get (20) _____ the train and take a boat. It was 7.15 p.m. when the train reached the Tay Bridge. The winds were even higher now. The signalman let the train onto the bridge, but the wind was so strong that he had to go back (21) _____ his house (22) _____ his hands and knees. He tried to contact the signalman (23) _____ the other side, but found that his instruments were dead, so he went down to the River Tay. The other signalman waited and worried because the train still hadn't come. Although the storm was still blowing, he went (24) _____ onto the bridge and found, (25) _____ his horror, that the high middle part (26) _____ the bridge had collapsed. He hoped that the train had been stopped (27) _____ the bridge, but then the Tay ferry brought back the terrible news: the bridge, together (28) _____ the whole train and all its seventy-five passengers and crew, had been blown (29) _____ the River Tay. No one was saved.

A year (30) _____ the accident Sir Thomas Bouch, the engineer, died a broken and ruined man. The locomotive lay (31) _____ the water (32) _____ three months, but when it was brought up, (33) _____ the great surprise (34) _____ all the engineers, it was able to run to Glasgow (35) _____ its own wheels. It worked (36) _____ the east coast (37) _____ Scotland (38) _____ 1907. (39) _____ many years, no driver was prepared to take it (40) _____ the Tay, but (41) _____ 28th December, 1908, exactly twenty-nine years (42) _____ the accident, it pulled the same Sunday night train (43) _____ the Tay Bridge.

b) Now close your magazine and work with a partner. Ask at least eight questions about the passage using a noun clause. You can start your sentence with **'Do you remember .../Do you know .../Can you tell me .../Does the passage tell us ...'**

eg: A: Can you tell me how people used to cross the River Forth and the River Tay a hundred years ago?

B: By ferry. (or I can't remember how they used to cross them.)

A: Does the passage tell us when the accident happened?

B: Yes, it happened on 28th December, 1879. (or Yes, but I don't remember when it happened.)

2

Complete the answer with a suitable preposition.

- eg: How can one be successful in business life? By working hard.
- 1- Where does the food we've eaten go? _____ the stomach.
 - 2- Where do planes fly? _____ the sky.
 - 3- How long has man been able to travel on vehicles? _____ the invention of the wheel.
 - 4- Mr Pitt was born in 1897. How long has he been on earth? _____ a century.
 - 5- How can you tighten loose screws? _____ a screwdriver.
 - 6- When do bats come out for food? _____ night.
 - 7- When do people normally work? _____ the day.
 - 8- Where do you usually go for a walk? _____ the river bank.
 - 9- Where do fish live? _____ water.
 - 10- How about frogs? Both _____ water and _____ land.
 - 11- Where do kangaroos carry their young? _____ their pouches.
 - 12- What happens if you drop a ball from the fifth floor? It falls _____ the ground.
 - 13- Why did your father go to Ankara? _____ business.
 - 14- And why did Sibel go to Alanya? _____ a holiday.
 - 15- By the way, where is your brother? _____ holiday.
 - 16- How do you usually come to school? _____ bus.
 - 17- And how did you come today? _____ a bus.
 - 18- How are you coming tomorrow? _____ foot.

3

Complete the sentences with suitable prepositions.

- 1- Who did you get that letter _____?
- 2- Did Mike apply _____ the job _____ your father's company?
- 3- Do you know what discouraged her _____ going abroad?
- 4- What are you complaining _____? Aren't you satisfied _____ your conditions here?
- 5- Are you used _____ eating spicy food, or shall I prepare something else _____ you?
- 6- When do you think you can deal _____ my case?
- 7- What are you most afraid _____ _____ the world?
- 8- I don't believe that he broke your cup _____ purpose. He must have done it _____ accident.
- 9- He was badly injured _____ a car accident yesterday.

4

a) Complete the table using the prepositions in the list.

in on under at without by for

a) doubt	e) mistake	i) instance
b) a change	f) least	j) first
c) the whole	g) delay	k) control
d) a hurry	h) last	l) pain

b) Complete the sentences using the prepositional phrases in the box above.

- 1- _____ you're here! I've been waiting for ages. Where have you been?
- 2- I'm sorry, I can't stop to talk because I'm _____.
- 3- If you are really _____ as much _____ as you say, you should see a doctor.
- 4- There will be _____ twenty people here tomorrow, but we should provide enough food for thirty, just in case.
- 5- That was, _____, the most boring film I've ever seen.
- 6- Working in the new office might seem a bit strange _____, but you'll soon get used to it.
- 7- Don't worry. They have got the fire _____. It won't spread to the other buildings.
- 8- He's had a few problems with maths, but _____, he's done very well this term.
- 9- I'm really sorry. I picked up your bag _____ and didn't realise until I got home.
- 10- We must reply to this letter _____, or we'll miss the last post.
- 11- Let's go to the park _____. I'm bored with spending every Saturday at the shopping centre.
- 12- He's very fussy about his food. He won't, _____, eat potatoes unless they've been mashed.

5

a) Match the phrasal verbs to the definitions.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>— 1- call off</p> <p>— 2- put on</p> <p>— 3- lay down</p> <p>— 4- look out</p> <p>— 5- cross out</p> <p>— 6- come across</p> <p>— 7- hand in</p> <p>— 8- break into</p> <p>— 9- go with</p> <p>— 10- take off</p> | <p>a) match, suit</p> <p>b) increase (especially in weight)</p> <p>c) cancel</p> <p>d) delete, erase</p> <p>e) give something to someone in authority</p> <p>f) remove (clothing)</p> <p>g) enter by force</p> <p>h) take care, be careful</p> <p>i) find or meet by chance</p> <p>j) establish rules</p> |
|--|---|

b) Complete the sentences using the phrasal verbs above. Pay attention to the verb form.

- 1-** _____! You're going to hit that cyclist.
- 2-** Somebody _____ the art gallery last night and stole three of the most valuable paintings.
- 3-** A: Do you think these brown shoes _____ this blue skirt?
B: No, not really.
- 4-** A: Why don't you _____ your jacket?
B: Because I'm cold.
- 5-** I ate an enormous amount of food while I was on holiday, but surprisingly, I didn't _____ any weight at all.
- 6-** The teacher wants us to _____ our assignments _____ at the end of next week.
- 7-** We had to _____ the trip because several of the group were ill.
- 8-** The committee will meet tomorrow to _____ the regulations for the new club.
- 9-** We _____ a lovely little restaurant while we were walking along the river bank last night.
- 10-** If you make a mistake, just _____ it _____ and write the answer again.

6

Complete the sentence with a phrasal verb which gives the meaning in parentheses.

- 1- According to the doctor, it will take her several weeks to _____ her illness.
(*recover from*)
- 2- She's decided to give up work in order to stay at home and _____ her children. (*raise a child*)
- 3- He seems to _____ his father in personality and his mother in appearance.
(*resemble*)
- 4- Terrorists planted a bomb in the centre of the city last week and _____ two large office blocks. (*explode*)
- 5- She _____ their offer because she thought she could get more money elsewhere. (*refuse*)
- 6- The opening of the new shopping centre has been _____ because some of the building work isn't finished. (*delay*)
- 7- Can you _____ the radio, please? I want to listen to the weather forecast.
(*increase volume*)
- 8- It took the fire brigade four hours to _____ the fire. (*extinguish*)
- 9- She lost control of the car and _____ a brick wall. (*crash*)
- 10- We'll have to _____ the meeting until tomorrow because the report isn't ready yet. (*postpone*)
- 11- _____ with your work while I'm out of the room. I'll be back in ten minutes.
(*continue*)
- 12- The plane _____ at half past ten, so we should get to the airport no later than half past nine to check in. (*leave the ground*)
- 13- I'm sorry we're late, but a car had _____ on the motorway and there was an enormous traffic jam as a result. (*stop working*)
- 14- Can you phone up the station and _____ the times of the morning trains to Manchester, please? (*discover information*)

UNIT 17

VOCABULARY BUILDING

Some Noun-Forming Suffixes

- 1** The suffixes **-er**, **-or**, **-ist**, **-eer** and **-ian** are used to produce nouns which tell us about people's jobs or pursuits.

teach — teacher

act — actor

tour — tourist

auction — auctioneer

history — historian

Complete the sentences using the noun form of the words in bold type. Make changes in spelling and use the plural form where necessary.

eg: A lot of people **visit** this area every year. Visitors come from all over the world.

- 1- The **mountain** was very steep, so the _____ all had great difficulty climbing it.
- 2- The trouble with _____ is that they never talk about anything but **politics**.
- 3- We'll need to employ a professional _____ to **translate** these legal documents.
- 4- He says he's an _____, but I don't think he's ever **invented** anything useful.
- 5- He wasn't **cycling** fast enough to keep up with the other _____ in the race.
- 6- While we were on holiday last year, we met a _____ who very kindly taught us to **dive** and let us use his equipment for free.
- 7- She was always good at **science** at school, so no one was surprised that she decided to be a _____ when she left.
- 8- Because they were very important guests for the restaurant, the head- _____ decided to **wait** on their table himself.
- 9- That _____ is excellent. She knows exactly where to find every book in the **library**.
- 10- After Mehmet II **conquered** Constantinople in 1453, he was given the title _____ in honour of his victory.
- 11- The _____ insisted on keeping his **violin** with him during the flight.
- 12- As an _____, he is responsible for the safety of all the people he **employs** while they are at work.

2 Some nouns are formed with the suffixes **-th** or **-t**.

eg: long — length give — gift

Complete the sentences using the noun form of the words in bold type.

eg: How **high** is Mount Everest? I have to find out its height.

- 1- With a _____ of 1,620 metres, Lake Baikal is the **deepest** lake in the world.
- 2- A: What's the _____ of the river?
B: I don't know, but it's too **wide** for us to swim across.
- 3- It has been so **dry** so far this year that farmers are expecting a _____ this summer.
- 4- Between the ages of eleven and thirteen, girls seem to **grow** much faster than boys. However, once boys reach fourteen or fifteen, their _____ rate rapidly increases.
- 5- I hope it doesn't **freeze** tonight because a _____ will kill the seedlings I've just planted.
- 6- A: You must be cold after your swim. Wrap this towel round you for _____.
B: No, I'm **warm** enough here in the sun, thanks.
- 7- A: I don't think I have the _____ to carry this box on my own.
B: Well get Alan to help you. He's really **strong**.
- 8- A: It's really **hot** today.
B: Yes, we need air-conditioning in _____ like this.
- 9- A: Are you sure what she said was **true**?
B: Yes, I am. I trust her to tell me the _____.
- 10- A: You seemed to be deep in _____ when I came in.
B: Yes, I was **thinking** about what I'm going to do when I finish university next month.

3 **-ion (-tion, -sion)** and **-ation (-ition, -cation)**, are common noun-forming suffixes in English.

eg: act — action describe — description admit — admission
admire — admiration recognise — recognition classify — classification

Write the noun forms of the following words.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1- repeat _____ 2- compete _____ 3- produce _____ 4- reflect _____ 5- attract _____ 6- persuade _____ 7- declare _____ 8- consider _____ | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 9- cancel _____ 10- apply _____ 11- divide _____ 12- invade _____ 13- resign _____ 14- expand _____ 15- identify _____ 16- hesitate _____ |
|--|--|

4 *-ance (-ence), -ment, -ity* and *-ness* are other common noun-forming suffixes in English.

eg: annoy — annoyance disappoint — disappointment equal — equality
 refer — reference weak — weakness

- | | | |
|--------------------|-----------------------|--|
| 1- dark _____ | 9- dense _____ | |
| 2- argue _____ | 10- able _____ | |
| 3- perform _____ | 11- intelligent _____ | |
| 4- advertise _____ | 12- appoint _____ | |
| 5- pay _____ | 13- obey _____ | |
| 6- resemble _____ | 14- develop _____ | |
| 7- generous _____ | 15- eager _____ | |
| 8- kind _____ | 16- announce _____ | |

5 Other suffixes for forming or modifying nouns: *-dom, -al, -hood, -ship, -ure (-ature), -cy and -y*

king — kingdom refuse — refusal child — childhood agent — agency
 relation — relationship press — pressure robber — robbery

- | | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|--|
| 1- recover _____ | 8- champion _____ | |
| 2- fluent _____ | 9- sign _____ | |
| 3- free _____ | 10- honest _____ | |
| 4- neighbour _____ | 11- please _____ | |
| 5- friend _____ | 12- accurate _____ | |
| 6- arrive _____ | 13- fail _____ | |
| 7- depart _____ | 14- partner _____ | |

Some adjective-forming suffixes

Suffix	Meaning	Example
-able	that can be	avoidable
-al	having qualities of	natural
-ant (-ent)	having the character of	independent
-ate (-ite)	having	affectionate
-ful	full of	thoughtful
-ic (-ical)	in the nature of, containing	romantic
-ish	in the manner of	childish
-less	without	useless
-ly	like	friendly
-ous	full of	famous
-y	resembling, full of	powdery, lucky

The suffixes **-ed** and **-ing** are also used to form adjectives.

frighten — frightened — frightening amaze — amazed — amazing

6 a) Find the adjectives ending in **-y** which give the same meaning as the following definitions.

eg: covered in sand — sandy

- | | |
|------------------------------|-------|
| 1- covered in mud | _____ |
| 2- with curls | _____ |
| 3- full of good health | _____ |
| 4- having waves | _____ |
| 5- containing a lot of water | _____ |
| 6- with a lot of salt | _____ |
| 7- with a lot of juice | _____ |
| 8- with a lot of greed | _____ |

b) Find adjectives ending in **-y** to match the definitions. The initial letters may help you.

eg: extremely rich w e a l t h y

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---------|
| 1- with a pleasant flavour | t _____ |
| 2- metal which has oxidized | r _____ |
| 3- hurried | h _____ |
| 4- not working properly, imperfect | f _____ |
| 5- slightly dangerous | r _____ |
| 6- something with a bright surface | s _____ |

7 The suffixes **-able** and **-ible** give the meaning of "can be ...".

eg: You can carry it. portable
 You can wash it. washable

- | | |
|-------------------------|-------|
| 1- You can drink it. | _____ |
| 2- You can eat it. | _____ |
| 3- You can avoid it. | _____ |
| 4- You can hear it. | _____ |
| 5- You can see it. | _____ |
| 6- You can believe it. | _____ |
| 7- You can divide it. | _____ |
| 8- You can bear it. | _____ |
| 9- You can tolerate it. | _____ |
| 10- You can count it. | _____ |

8

Write the adjective forms of the following words.

- | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1- obey _____ | 9- coast _____ |
| 2- wisdom _____ | 10- logic _____ |
| 3- magic _____ | 11- ambition _____ |
| 4- passion _____ | 12- reason _____ |
| 5- advantage _____ | 13- danger _____ |
| 6- apply _____ | 14- repair _____ |
| 7- slip _____ | 15- urge _____ |
| 8- anxiety _____ | 16- storm _____ |

9

Complete the table with **-ful** and **-less**. Some of the words can take both suffixes and some take only one.

eg: hope — hopeful — hopeless
 beauty — beautiful — _____
 worth — _____ — worthless

	-ful	-less
1- skill	_____	_____
2- harm	_____	_____
3- power	_____	_____
4- pain	_____	_____
5- delight	_____	_____
6- peace	_____	_____
7- stain	_____	_____
8- meaning	_____	_____
9- use	_____	_____
10- value	_____	_____
11- thought	_____	_____
12- care	_____	_____
13- help	_____	_____
14- fear	_____	_____
15- respect	_____	_____
16- colour	_____	_____
17- forget	_____	_____
18- end	_____	_____

10 Some adjectives in English are formed by adding **-ly** to nouns.

eg: week — weekly
love — lovely

Write the adjective forms of the following words by adding **-y** or **-ly**.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>1- live _____</p> <p>2- blood _____</p> <p>3- ice _____</p> <p>4- month _____</p> <p>5- day _____</p> <p>6- wind _____</p> <p>7- order _____</p> | <p>8- friend _____</p> <p>9- grease _____</p> <p>10- coward _____</p> <p>11- year _____</p> <p>12- greed _____</p> <p>13- rain _____</p> <p>14- cost _____</p> |
|---|--|

11 Most adverbs in English are formed by adding **-ly** to adjectives, but adjectives that end in **-ly** don't normally take the adverb suffix **-ly**. Instead, they are used in a phrase.

eg: Sally is very **friendly**.
Sally spoke to me **in a friendly way**.

a) Write the adjective and adverb forms of the following words.

eg: courage — courageous — courageously

	Adjective	Adverb
1- charm	_____	_____
2- danger	_____	_____
3- elegance	_____	_____
4- noise	_____	_____
5- succeed	_____	_____
6- fool	_____	_____
7- fortune	_____	_____
8- anger	_____	_____
9- occasion	_____	_____

b) Complete the sentences choosing from the adjectives and adverbs in the list above.

- 1- _____, the fire brigade arrived in time to rescue all the residents of the building uninjured.
- 2- The room was too _____ for me to concentrate on my work.
- 3- I think motor racing is extremely _____. I wouldn't even dare to try it.
- 4- It was a great relief for all the team when they completed the project _____.
- 5- Sally tries to watch her diet most of the time, so she eats sweet things very _____.
- 6- It was _____ of him to invest all his money in that company without knowing anything about its past.
- 7- The police had great difficulty trying to stop the _____ crowd getting into the Town Hall.

12

Complete the sentences using the correct form of the words given.

- | | |
|---|--------------------|
| <p>1- A: What are you writing?
B: An _____ letter for a job I saw in the paper.</p> | <p>APPLY</p> |
| <p>2- I prefer to shop at the big supermarket outside town because there's more _____.</p> | <p>CHOOSE</p> |
| <p>3- The police tried to stop the _____ from marching past the parliament building.</p> | <p>DEMONSTRATE</p> |
| <p>4- The fireman _____ went into the burning building to rescue the little girl.</p> | <p>COURAGE</p> |
| <p>5- He caused his parents great _____ because he stayed overnight at a friend's and forgot to tell them where he was.</p> | <p>ANXIOUS</p> |
| <p>6- I couldn't sleep last night because our neighbours were having an extremely _____ party.</p> | <p>NOISE</p> |
| <p>7- As soon as he realised the _____ he was in, he started to scream for help.</p> | <p>DANGEROUS</p> |
| <p>8- A: You aren't still reading the same book, are you?
B: No, it's a _____ one.</p> | <p>DIFFER</p> |
| <p>9- He was driving so _____ that it wasn't surprising that he had an accident.</p> | <p>CARE</p> |
| <p>10- The _____ of their flight was delayed because of heavy fog.</p> | <p>ARRIVE</p> |
| <p>11- We've just heard that the operation has been _____ completed.</p> | <p>SUCCEED</p> |
| <p>12- We'll lose the order if the _____ is late.</p> | <p>DELIVER</p> |
| <p>13- There's such a strong _____ between them that it's easy to tell that they are brother and sister.</p> | <p>RESEMBLE</p> |
| <p>14- After we've checked in, we can get a cup of coffee in the _____ lounge.</p> | <p>DEPART</p> |
| <p>15- The managers couldn't find a _____ to the problem.</p> | <p>SOLVE</p> |
| <p>16- She doesn't look very _____ with all that make-up on, does she?</p> | <p>NATURE</p> |
| <p>17- Be careful on this road. It's very _____ because of the snow.</p> | <p>SLIP</p> |
| <p>18- There were a number of _____ people at the reception last night.</p> | <p>FAME</p> |

13

Complete the sentences using the correct form of the words given.

1- courage

- a) It was very _____ of you to rescue that boy from the river when you yourself are scared of water.
- b) My parents _____ me to take an interest in art and music from an early age.
- c) If you gave her a little more _____, she might try harder.

2- able

- a) The _____ to speak a foreign language is a great advantage in life.
- b) It is very difficult for _____ people, especially those in wheelchairs, to get into this building because there are so many steps.
- c) She didn't do enough revision, so she was _____ to answer half the questions in the exam.

3- produce

- a) That company's _____ are sold all over the world.
- b) _____ at the factory was stopped when the workers went on strike.
- c) The film's director found it very difficult to work with the _____.

4- comfort

- a) I tried to sleep during the journey, but the seats on the coach were too _____.
- b) When I got home, she was relaxing _____ in front of the fire.
- c) This injection won't really hurt, but you might feel a little _____.

5- different

- a) Our opinions _____ on many points, but in spite of this, we rarely argue.
- b) I've bought a new vase to replace the one I broke. Do you think she'll notice the _____?
- c) Our teacher dresses very _____ when he is out of school.

6- admire

- a) I have great _____ for both him and his work.
- b) My brother is very good-looking, and so has a lot of _____.
- c) A small group of people stopped to look _____ at the artist's work.

14

Choose the correct word form to complete the sentences.

- 1- It's _____ to take out insurance when you go on holiday.
A) adviser B) advise C) advice D) advisable
- 2- Sadly, there was only one _____ of the plane crash.
A) survival B) survivor C) surviving D) survive
- 3- We were relieved when all the passengers and crew were brought _____ off the sinking ship.
A) save B) safe C) safely D) safety
- 4- Because of the _____ of hospital beds, the waiting-list for minor operations is very long.
A) shorten B) shortly C) short D) shortage
- 5- I need to think about this more carefully before I make my _____.
A) decisive B) decision C) decide D) indecisive
- 6- The crowd was so _____ packed at the stadium that we could hardly move.
A) densely B) denseness C) dense D) density
- 7- It is my _____ that the country's economic situation will get worse before it gets better.
A) belief B) believable C) disbelief D) believe
- 8- She seemed quite _____ by the incident when I spoke to her.
A) disturb B) disturbed C) disturbing D) disturbance
- 9- I wish my dog were more _____. He won't even come to me when I call him.
A) obey B) disobey C) obediently D) obedient

- 10- Take your suit to the dry-cleaner's in the high street. They're very _____, so everything is always ready when they say it will be.
- A) reliable B) reliance C) rely D) reliability
- 11- These two plans are not exactly the same although there are a number of _____.
- A) similarly B) dissimilar C) similarities D) similar
- 12- She's not beautiful, but she's quite _____.
- A) attract B) attractive C) attraction D) unattractive
- 13- The smell in the room was so _____ that I had to go outside.
- A) pleasure B) displeased C) please D) unpleasant
- 14- People who attend the club _____ this year will be given free membership next year.
- A) regulate B) regularity C) irregular D) regularly
- 15- I'm not prepared to _____ such rudeness any longer.
- A) tolerate B) intolerable C) tolerable D) intolerant
- 16- When we arrived, the house was in complete _____.
- A) darkly B) darkness C) darken D) darkish
- 17- Women all over the world have been actively fighting for _____ with men since the beginning of the century.
- A) unequal B) equal C) equality D) equalize
- 18- Her illness left her so _____ that she could hardly do anything for herself.
- A) weakness B) weaken C) weak D) weakly

UNIT 18

SYNONYMS and ANTONYMS

Synonym

☛ If two or more words have the same meaning, they are called synonyms.

eg: wide — broad belongings — possessions

Antonym

☛ The **antonym** of a word is the word with the opposite meaning.

eg: beautiful — ugly increase — decrease

1 Match the words to their synonyms in the list.

incredible

abandoned

annoyed

chief

industrious

strange

trustworthy

elegant

considerate

enormous

particular

impolite

- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| 1- hardworking _____ | 7- thoughtful _____ |
| 2- huge _____ | 8- special _____ |
| 3- unbelievable _____ | 9- odd _____ |
| 4- rude _____ | 10- angry _____ |
| 5- reliable _____ | 11- smart _____ |
| 6- main _____ | 12- deserted _____ |

2 There are six pairs of synonymous words in the following sentences. Can you find them?

- 1- The **collision** of a bus with a lorry brought the traffic to a standstill on the highway yesterday.
- 2- We have to restrict our **expenditure** on certain luxury items if we want to save for a house.
- 3- The teacher didn't explain the subject very clearly, so most of the students were **confused**.
- 4- If someone is bitten by this snake, he has very little chance of surviving because its venom is **lethal**.
- 5- We all rushed to the window to see what had happened when we heard the loud **crash**.
- 6- This chemical is **deadly** to human beings, so always keep it out of children's reach.
- 7- Although a peace treaty has been signed between the two countries, the enemy troops are still **raiding** the villages on the border.
- 8- The institute should reduce its **spending** by half, or it will face serious financial problems.
- 9- My watch is never **accurate**. It goes either too fast or too slowly.
- 10- The instructions in the manual were so complex that I was **perplexed** and couldn't start the machine.
- 11- The timing has to be **precise**, or we won't achieve the desired result.
- 12- A gang **attacked** the youths of our street and beat them badly.

3

Complete the sentences with the opposites of the words in bold type. Use the words in the box.

natural	distant	reluctant	reveal
similar	shallow	blunt	hostile
boundless	punctual	conceited	shabby

- 1- Mike, don't swim in the **deep** end of the pool. Swim in the _____ end.
- 2- A few of the villagers were very **friendly** to us, but the rest were rather _____.
- 3- The authorities were trying to **hide** the facts, but the press _____ everything.
- 4- I don't agree that the applications of the computer are **limited**. On the contrary, I believe that they are _____.
- 5- I never use **artificial** flavourings because they are not healthy. I prefer _____ ones.
- 6- Our tastes in clothing are very **different**, but somehow, they are very _____ in our choice of jewellery.
- 7- Mr Eames is never **late** for his appointments. He is very _____.
- 8- A: Is the village where your grandparents live **close** to the city?
B: No, it is very _____.
- 9- This knife is not **sharp** enough to cut this meat with. It's rather _____.
- 10- Everybody at the party was wearing very **elegant** clothes, so Peter really stood out with his _____ clothes.
- 11- We thought he was **willing** to transfer to the other branch, but he seemed quite _____ when he was offered a position there.
- 12- I've never seen Wendy being **modest** about her achievements. She is always so _____.

4

Each word in the list has an antonym in the box. Can you find and write them in their places?

refuse	weak	accidental	inconsiderate
lose	forbid	similarity	departure
spend	exit	thrifty	complex
generous	brave	admit	improve

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1- accept _____ | 9- earn _____ |
| 2- extravagant _____ | 10- cowardly _____ |
| 3- arrival _____ | 11- intentional _____ |
| 4- deny _____ | 12- thoughtful _____ |
| 5- deteriorate _____ | 13- entrance _____ |
| 6- simple _____ | 14- mean _____ |
| 7- permit _____ | 15- strong _____ |
| 8- win _____ | 16- difference _____ |

5

Choose the *synonym* for the word in bold type.

1- I wanted to buy a **genuine** leather bag, but unfortunately, I couldn't afford one.

- A) rare B) expensive C) real D) correct

2- I think something is wrong with Jim. He looked **awful** when I met him just now.

- A) plentiful B) dreadful C) terrified D) surprising

3- The weather centre **predicted** rain for today, but it's been warm and sunny so far.

- A) suggested B) advised C) forecast D) promised

4- We may not find a suitable place for our picnic in that part of the forest because the trees are very **dense** there.

- A) thick B) tall C) rare D) scarce

5- I don't think your pink blouse is **appropriate** for a job interview. You should put on something more serious.

- A) funny B) suitable C) attractive D) correct

6- This is all that I know about the case. If you want to get **further** information, you can contact head office.

- A) closer B) reliable C) official D) additional

7- Please don't **conceal** anything from me. I want to learn the truth.

- A) break B) prevent C) hide D) argue

8- The company **rejected** his job application.

- A) refused B) injected C) accepted D) denied

9- We were relieved to hear that the children had been **saved** from the burning house.

- A) improved B) rescued C) deserted D) admitted

10- We were all surprised that she **recovered from** the shock so quickly.

- A) put out B) got over C) called off D) ran across

6Choose the **opposite** of the word in bold type.

- 1- The ship **sank** with all its passengers and crew on board.
A) swam B) disappeared C) floated D) located
- 2- It's quite **unusual** that he goes to work wearing jeans.
A) inconvenient B) ordinary C) thoughtless D) efficient
- 3- More than fifty people were **arrested** during the demonstration.
A) attacked B) pressed C) injured D) released
- 4- The steak we ate at the restaurant was not very **tender**.
A) tough B) cooked C) raw D) delicious
- 5- My son gets very miserable when the football team he supports **loses** a match.
A) earns B) gains C) beats D) wins
- 6- The **difference** between the two brothers is great.
A) fondness B) resemblance C) assistance D) arrangement
- 7- My brother is working **temporarily** as a waiter.
A) successfully B) repeatedly C) permanently D) deliberately
- 8- This spring has been a **dry** season on the whole and I'm afraid this will mean a shortage of water in the summer.
A) dull B) wet C) flooding D) windy
- 9- He **voluntarily** agreed to give up his job at a company and to join us as a partner.
A) reluctantly B) enthusiastically C) inefficiently D) considerably
- 10- A number of **fixed** health centres have been built in the area.
A) repaired B) reliable C) mobile D) effective

NEGATIONS

☛ Most words in English are made negative with **un-**, **in-**, **dis-** and **-less**.

happy — unhappy correct — incorrect value — valueless
 agree — disagree

☛ "**in-**" may become **im-**, **il-** or **ir-** depending on the first letter of the word.

Words beginning with **m** or **p**: polite — impolite mortal — immortal
 Words beginning with **l**: logical — illogical
 Words beginning with **r**: regular — irregular

But this rule is not valid for all words. There are exceptions.

pleasant — unpleasant real — unreal lucky — unlucky

7 Write the opposite form of the following words using **in-**, **il-**, **ir-** or **im-**.

- | | |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1- mobile _____ | 9- capable _____ |
| 2- sensitive _____ | 10- perfect _____ |
| 3- sufficient _____ | 11- modest _____ |
| 4- formal _____ | 12- legible _____ |
| 5- responsible _____ | 13- applicable _____ |
| 6- repairable _____ | 14- credible _____ |
| 7- mature _____ | 15- patient _____ |
| 8- literate _____ | 16- dependent _____ |

8 Add **in-**, **un-** or **-less** to make the following words negative.

- | | |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1- natural _____ | 12- willing _____ |
| 2- efficient _____ | 13- countable _____ |
| 3- aim _____ | 14- meaning _____ |
| 4- usual _____ | 15- fear _____ |
| 5- experienced _____ | 16- able _____ |
| 6- flexible _____ | 17- harm _____ |
| 7- important _____ | 18- wise _____ |
| 8- mercy _____ | 19- visible _____ |
| 9- hospitable _____ | 20- power _____ |
| 10- attractive _____ | 21- equality _____ |
| 11- separable _____ | 22- acceptable _____ |

9

a) Add **un-** or **dis-** to the words below.

eg: agree — disagree lock — unlock

- | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1- load _____ | 7- appear _____ |
| 2- pack _____ | 8- dress _____ |
| 3- qualify _____ | 9- satisfied _____ |
| 4- advantage _____ | 10- approve _____ |
| 5- fasten _____ | 11- cooked _____ |
| 6- do _____ | 12- loyal _____ |

b) Complete the sentences using the negative words above. Pay attention to the verb form.

- 1- It's been almost a week since I came back from holiday, but I still haven't _____ my suitcases.
- 2- The boss is obviously _____ with the new typist's performance because she is making a lot of spelling mistakes.
- 3- My parents _____ of a young girl's staying out until late, so they don't let me go to late-night parties.
- 4- "Please don't _____ your seat-belts until the plane has stopped," the hostess reminded the passengers.
- 5- You don't need to help him. He is old enough to _____ himself and to put on his pyjamas.
- 6- The only _____ of my job is that I have to get up very early.
- 7- The goods lorry has just arrived, and the workers have started to _____ its cargo.
- 8- When he leaves for school, I always wave to my son until he _____ round the corner.
- 9- It's true that vegetables are more nutritious when they are eaten _____, but to be honest, they are not as delicious then.
- 10- If you feel so hot, why don't you _____ a few buttons on your coat?
- 11- When the teacher caught Glenn cheating, she _____ him from the exam.
- 12- It was very _____ of him to leave the company just when they desperately needed his assistance.

UNIT 19

CONFUSING WORDS

A- Confusing Verbs

a) arouse, aroused, aroused (transitive) The strange appearance of the customer aroused the owner's suspicion.	b) arise, arose, arisen (intransitive) The shop owner's suspicion arose because of the customer's strange appearance
c) raise, raised, raised (transitive) They've raised the price of petrol twice this month.	d) rise, rose, risen (intransitive) The price of petrol has risen twice this month.
e) bind, bound, bound (tie up) We bound the package tightly with a rope.	f) bound, bounded, bounded (1.border 2.jump) Turkey is bounded by Bulgaria and Greece in the north-west. The school children happily bounded all the way home.
g) find, found, found I found this watch in the park.	h) found, founded, founded (establish) Atatürk founded the Republic of Turkey.
i) fall, fell, fallen He fell while he was getting off the train.	j) fell, felled, felled (cut down) They felled the huge tree in the city centre.
k) hang, hung, hung (suspend something) I hung the washing out on the balcony.	l) hang, hanged, hanged (kill someone by hanging) The rioters hanged a lot of people.
m) grind, ground, ground (crush into powder) She bought whole coffee beans and ground them herself.	n) ground, grounded, grounded (compel to stay on the ground) The plane was grounded for safety checks.
o) set, set, set (transitive) She set the books on the shelf.	p) sit, sat, sat (intransitive) We sat on the grass chatting.
q) lay, laid, laid (transitive: put, set) She laid the table for dinner.	r) lie, lay, lain (intransitive) I lay on the sofa watching television.
s) see, saw, seen I saw Lucy while I was coming here.	t) saw, sawed, sawed/sawn (cut with a saw) He sawed the wood into small pieces.
u) wind, wound, wound (twist, turn) I wound the clock because it had stopped.	v) wound, wounded, wounded (injure) The burglar wounded the host with a knife.

Note: *Lie* is a regular verb if it means "not to tell the truth".

She **lied** to us about her exam results.

1

Choose the correct word in parentheses.

- 1- In the past, people used to be (*hung/hanged*) even for minor crimes.
- 2- If I'd (*sawn/seen*) Mary yesterday, I'd have given her your message.
- 3- He had (*wound/wounded*) the string so tightly around the parcel that I couldn't undo it.
- 4- Discontent (*arose/aroused*) among the workers when the management didn't keep its promise.
- 5- The management's not keeping its promise (*arose/aroused*) discontent among the workers.
- 6- We were (*laying/lying*) in the sun when suddenly a strong wind started blowing.
- 7- She (*laid/lay*) the carvings she bought in Africa on the mantelpiece.
- 8- The crew had to abandon the ship because it'd become (*grounded/ground*) on the rocks.
- 9- The children shook the tree so that the chestnuts would (*fall/fell*) to the ground.
- 10- He (*hanged/hung*) his coat on the hook in the hall before he went into the living room.
- 11- A lot of our soldiers were (*wound/wounded*) during the enemy's air raid.
- 12- When my son sprained his ankle, we (*wound/wounded*) a bandage around it.
- 13- When the teacher completed his question, I (*rose/raised*) my hand to answer.
- 14- We (*set/sat*) on top of the hill and watched the spectacular scenery as the sun (*rose/raised*).
- 15- She gently (*lied/laid*) the baby into her cot, fearing that she might wake her up.
- 16- They (*fell/felled*) the tree in their back garden because it was too close to the bedroom window.
- 17- One leg of the table was longer than the others, so he (*saw/sawed*) it off a few centimetres.
- 18- She worked diligently and perseveringly, and so, by the age of thirty, she'd (*risen/raised*) to a managerial position.
- 19- This university was (*founded/found*) during the first years of the Republic, so it is the oldest in the country.
- 20- Flour is obtained by (*grounding/grinding*) wheat in mills.
- 21- The cat (*bounded/bound*) over the wall and chased the rat down the corner of the garden.
- 22- I forgot to (*set/sit*) the alarm clock, and as a result, I overslept.
- 23- Switzerland is (*bound/bounded*) by France, Germany, Austria, Liechtenstein and Italy.
- 24- Several problems (*aroused/arose*) during the expedition to the North Pole.

B- Confusing Word Pairs

- 1- **dairy** (place where milk products are made; milk products)
diary (book for daily records and appointments)

- a) I must check with my _____ before I tell you what time we can meet.
b) My son can't drink milk as he is allergic to _____ products.

- 2- **unknown** (not known, not famous)
infamous (famous for bad reasons)

- a) The author of this book must be _____. I've never heard of him.
b) The revolts against the young republic went down in history as _____ events.

- 3- **invaluable** (very valuable; worth too high to be measured)
valueless (having no value; without worth)

- a) I'm afraid this painting is not an original Picasso, Madam, and so quite _____.
b) I'm indebted to Sarah for the _____ help she gave me during my hard times.

- 4- **worthless** (useless; having no value)
priceless (too valuable to be given a price)

- a) Topkapı Palace Museum is particularly famous for its _____ pieces of china.
b) You've dropped my favourite vase and broken it into pieces! It's now _____.

- 5- **unable** (not able)
disabled (physically or mentally restricted or handicapped)

- a) She was _____ to type very fast, so it took her ages to complete her report.
b) On buses, the seats behind the driver are usually reserved for _____ people.

- 6- **discover** (find, either by chance or as a result of research, something that already exists)
invent (make something for the first time)

- a) Paper was _____ by the Chinese.
b) Radium, which was _____ by Madam Curie, eventually caused the scientist to die of cancer.

7- **beside** (next to)

besides (also; as well as)

- a) _____ speaking fluent English, you should also have a good understanding of human psychology for this job.
- b) Come and sit _____ me. The view is excellent from here.

8- **genius** (person with very great mental capacity)

genuine (true; real)

- a) Mozart proved himself to be a _____ of music at a very young age.
- b) Is this picture a _____ Van Gogh or just a good copy?

9- **stationary** (not moving; immobile)

stationery (writing materials, e.g. pens, paper, etc.)

- a) A: I need to take down a note. Where do you keep your _____?
B: In the top drawer of my study table.
- b) The accident was not her fault because her car was _____ at the time.

10- **economic** (about trade and industry)

economical (not wasteful; money-saving)

- a) The country's _____ situation is getting worse with each day.
- b) Our new car is more _____ than the old one. It uses less petrol.

11- **affect** (verb)

effect (noun)

- a) Children are greatly _____ by their parents' quarrels.
- b) Our criticism doesn't seem to have an _____ on him! He still does as he likes.

12- **advise** (verb)

advice (noun)

- a) I _____ her not to give up her job without finding a new one, but she didn't listen to me.
- b) You should talk to someone with more experience in this field and ask for his or her _____.

UNIT 20

REVISION

- 1- While I _____ out the cellar, I _____ this old brooch.
- A) was clearing/found
B) cleared/have found
C) have cleared/will find
D) am clearing/am finding
- 2- He _____ for only ten minutes when he _____ to feel seasick.
- A) sailed/has started
B) was sailing/had started
C) had been sailing/started
D) is sailing/will start
- 3- Generally, I _____ much television during the week because I _____ work quite late.
- A) haven't watched/am finishing
B) won't watch/have finished
C) don't watch/finish
D) didn't watch/had finished
- 4- I _____ you as soon as I _____ the tickets.
- A) called/get
B) will call/have got
C) call/will get
D) am going to call/got
- 5- _____ someone please _____ the phone? It _____ for five minutes now.
- A) Will ... answer/has been ringing
B) Must ... answer/rings
C) Shall ... answer/is ringing
D) Has ... answered/has rung
- 6- The Olympic Games _____ once every four years.
- A) hold B) have held
C) are held D) had been held
- 7- Look. The postman _____ towards the house and someone _____ a parcel.
- A) is coming/is going to get
B) will come/gets
C) comes/has got
D) has been coming/will get
- 8- I _____ something to eat before we leave. Food in service stations is very expensive.
- A) could have got B) must have got
C) used to get D) would rather get
- 9- We were stuck in traffic for ages. It was lucky that we _____ the train.
- A) could catch B) were able to catch
C) should catch D) might have caught
- 10- You _____ for another job if you're really as unhappy in your present job as you say you are.
- A) will look B) had to look
C) would look D) should look
- 11- Unfortunately, the packages _____ until next week.
- A) won't be delivered
B) don't deliver
C) haven't delivered
D) aren't delivered
- 12- That _____ John who left the message on the answer machine. He was in a meeting all yesterday afternoon.
- A) mustn't be
B) didn't use to be
C) doesn't have to be
D) couldn't have been

13- If we _____ another £100, we _____ at a much better hotel next week.

- A) have/would stay
- B) had/could stay
- C) are having/can stay
- D) had had/might stay

14- If only Mike _____ me before that he was in trouble, I _____ something to help him.

- A) tells/will do
- B) has told/should have done
- C) had told/could have done
- D) could tell/may do

15- I think I left my keys in the jacket _____ I was wearing last night.

- A) whom B) Ø
- C) where D) what

16- I gave the letter to the secretary, _____ said she'd pass it on to the manager.

- A) who B) that
- C) Ø D) which

17- She usually drives to the station, _____ she leaves her car and catches a train into the centre.

- A) which B) where
- C) that D) Ø

18- The man _____ I met on the train turned out to be the manager of our Izmir branch.

- A) which B) whose
- C) where D) whom

19- Use the knives _____ are in the drawer next to the sink.

- A) whose B) Ø
- C) where D) which

20- _____ you and Jason like to join us for a weekend in Paris next month?

- A) Do B) Can
- C) Would D) Did

21- A: _____ go for a drive in the country this weekend?

B: I _____, but my grandparents are coming to stay.

- A) Let's/should have
- B) Shall we/do
- C) Must we/went
- D) Why don't we/would love to

22- A: _____ you give me a hand with these bags?

B: Yes, of course. Where do you want me to put them?

- A) Can B) Did
- C) Do D) Shall

23- A: Jane's not coming to the meeting tomorrow, _____ ?

B: I _____, because at the last one she didn't say anything useful.

- A) has she/think so
- B) is she/hope not
- C) isn't it/don't think so
- D) will you/hope so

24- Greg's got the day off tomorrow, and Marcus has _____, so we're going to be really busy.

- A) either B) too
- C) neither D) so

25- We've got _____ minutes before the train leaves, so let's go and have a coffee.

- A) a little B) not many
C) much D) a few

26- A: Have you _____ read anything by Tolstoy?

B: I tried to _____, but I didn't really enjoy it.

- A) ever/once B) never/also
C) since/ago D) always/often

27- She's been acting very strangely _____ she came back from holiday, hasn't she?

- A) for B) when
C) just D) since

28- A: Why are you _____ here? It's eight o'clock.

B: Oh, I'm waiting for a phone call from a customer in Japan.

- A) still B) ever
C) yet D) so far

29- A: Is Mary working _____ your company now?

B: No, she's a student _____ Manchester University. She just came in to say hello to me.

- A) with/for B) at/about
C) in/by D) for/at

30- You can't join this club unless you're _____ eighteen, so I'm afraid you're too young.

- A) under B) below
C) over D) about

31- She walked out of the room _____ saying anything. What's wrong _____ her?

- A) without/with B) from/about
C) about/for D) between/from

32- Whenever there's a thunderstorm, our dog hides _____ that armchair until it's over.

- A) under B) across
C) along D) in

33- A: How did you hurt your ankle?

B: Oh, I twisted it _____ I was running for the bus.

- A) as soon as B) until
C) while D) during

34- We arranged to go skating last night, _____ Nigel had to work late, _____ we're going tonight instead.

- A) and/after
B) but/so
C) because of/but
D) although/and

35- _____ our redecorating the house, we're not happy with the way it looks.

- A) Because B) Although
C) In spite of D) Since

36- I'll pay him the money I owe him _____ he apologises for what he said to me.

- A) so B) when
C) although D) but

37- She's been feeling ill all day _____ she ate too much at the restaurant last night.

- A) after B) because
C) in spite of D) so

38- I can't find _____ cheque book anywhere. Have you seen _____?

- A) his/its
B) my/it
C) myself/yourself
D) our/their

39- Clara and Louise promised to bring _____ a copy of that new cassette, but I'm sure _____ will forget.

- A) we/ours B) them/me
C) us/they D) ours/we

40- If _____ house isn't big enough for a party, you can use _____ if you like.

- A) yours/us B) yourself/our
C) you/we D) your/ours

41- We couldn't find _____ useful in the school library to help us with our assignment. Maybe we'll find _____ in the town library.

- A) anyone/anyone
B) anything/something
C) something/everywhere
D) nothing/anything

42- I want to take my parents _____ this evening, but _____ is so expensive.

- A) somewhere/everywhere
B) everywhere/nowhere
C) anywhere/somewhere
D) nowhere/anywhere

43- I thought that _____ wanted fish for the main course, so I didn't order _____ else. Sorry!

- A) no one/somebody
B) everything/no one
C) someone/nothing
D) everyone/anything

44- She tried to make soup, but she realised she didn't have _____ onions.

- A) any B) some
C) an D) much

45- If they _____ the time table, they _____ the train easily.

- A) check/would catch
B) will check/are catching
C) had checked/would have caught
D) checked/have caught

46- A: Why are you looking so miserable?

B: The weather's terrible here. I wish I _____ in a cafe on the south coast now.

- A) would be B) were
C) am D) have been

47- Oh! I can't buy this dress. If I _____, I _____ any money to go out tonight.

- A) did/can't have
B) have done/wouldn't have
C) had done/wouldn't have had
D) do/won't have

48- A: What did you buy in England? This suitcase is much _____ when you went.

B: Not much; just some new clothes.

- A) as heavy as B) so heavy that
C) heavier than D) too heavy

49- I don't like baklava! It's _____ to eat much.

- A) sweet enough B) sweeter than
C) the sweetest D) too sweet

50- It was _____ warm last night _____ we sat on our balcony talking until very late.

- A) both/and B) so/that
C) such a/that D) as/as

51- A: What do you think we should do today?
B: How about visiting a museum?
Which does the guide-book say is _____ ?

- A) the most interesting
B) so interesting
C) more interested
D) interested enough

52- It was _____ a shame that she didn't win. She was certainly _____ of all.

- A) very/better B) such/the best
C) more/well D) as/good

53- She never stops talking! She doesn't let anybody else _____ .

- A) to speak B) spoke
C) speaking D) speak

54- Look there's Peggy. She's getting married today and she's just had her nails _____ .

- A) manicuring B) manicured
C) manicure D) to manicure

55- I really need _____ some clothes. I've been wearing the same jeans for five days now.

- A) to wash B) wash
C) washing D) washed

56- He really enjoys _____ children. He says they make him _____ young.

- A) teach/feeling B) to teach/felt
C) teaching/feel D) taught/to feel

57- I'm so bored with _____ Turkish food every day. Let's go for a Chinese meal tonight.

- A) eat B) ate
C) eaten D) eating

58- It's really hard _____ what to have. Everything on the menu sounds lovely.

- A) chose B) chosen
C) to choose D) choose

59- A: Jim wanted to know why you _____ him last night.

B: Oh no, I completely forgot about going to the cinema.

- A) hadn't met B) won't meet
C) haven't met D) don't meet

60- Clare asked me if I _____ to the dentist's yet, so I told her that I _____ the next day.

- A) went/will go
B) am going/go
C) had been/was going
D) have gone/went

61- I wonder how she manages to remain so cheerful _____ all the misfortunes she's had recently.

- A) because of B) when
- C) in spite of D) although

62- I can't understand _____ she wears so much make-up! She doesn't look natural at all.

- A) when B) why
- C) whom D) what

63- I agree _____ she is capable of running the office, but she is just too lazy.

- A) what B) where
- C) whether D) that

64- I had difficulty breathing _____ the extremely hot and humid weather.

- A) because of B) while
- C) in spite of D) although

65- Have you decided _____ people you're going to invite to your party?

- A) who B) whose
- C) how many D) where

66- Do you know _____ the length of the Mississippi is?

- A) where B) how
- C) what D) that

67- In volleyball, players jump and knock a ball _____ a net _____ their hands.

- A) over/with B) round/into
- C) through/on D) along/across

68- Baseball, _____ is played by two teams of nine players, is a popular American game.

- A) where B) whose
- C) that D) which

69- If you want to learn _____ to drive a car, you'll need a driving instructor.

- A) when B) how
- C) where D) whom

70- Our washing machine hasn't been working properly recently, and _____ our dishwasher.

- A) so does B) nor does
- C) neither has D) so is

GOOD LUCK

ELS WORKSHEETS

QUIZZES

QUIZ 1

Units 1-5

Choose the correct answer. (2.5 points for each)

- 1- I ____ Simon that he could come with us next week if he bought his ticket today.
- A) asked B) told
C) wondered D) said
- 2- Why don't you take a few days off work? You've been working really hard ____ and you look rather tired.
- A) last week B) tomorrow
C) recently D) yesterday
- 3- I ____ this book for the last two hours, but I ____ really ____ any of it.
- A) am going to read/don't ... understand
B) am reading/didn't ... understand
C) was reading/won't understand
D) have been reading/haven't ... understood
- 4- A: Have the invitations been sent out ____?
B: No. They won't be ready to go ____ tomorrow.
- A) since/before B) so far/just
C) yet/until D) ever/during
- 5- A: ____ I take this holiday brochure home with me?
B: No, I'm afraid it's the only one we have here.
- A) Can B) Must
C) Do D) Did
- 6- Maria has just telephoned. She says she ____ late home tonight because there ____ a problem with the trains.
- A) was/will be
B) has been/was
C) will be/is
D) had been/is going to be
- 7- Look at Gary with that huge crowd of friends. It's hard to believe that he ____ have no self-confidence at all when he was a child.
- A) used to B) would
C) must D) might
- 8- She was really excited about her trip to Switzerland because she'd never seen a mountain ____.
- A) since B) before
C) until D) already
- 9- Usually the post ____ at ten o'clock, but it's a little late today.
- A) delivers
B) is delivered
C) has delivered
D) was delivered
- 10- The shop ____ I bought this scarf sells some beautiful things.
- A) that B) whose
C) who D) where
- 11- A: Your house looks lovely.
B: Thank you. We decorated ____
____, you know.
- A) us/our B) it/ourselves
C) them/theirs D) itself/ours
- 12- Don't eat this cheese. We've had it for ages and it's ____.
- A) set out B) put out
C) taken off D) gone off
- 13- I'll have to go by bus tomorrow because the car ____ at the moment.
- A) services B) is servicing
C) is being serviced D) will be serviced

14- I couldn't sleep because someone in our block _____ really loud music all night.

- A) plays B) was playing
C) has played D) is playing

15- I really wish I _____ afford to buy a computer, but they are just too expensive.

- A) can B) have been able to
C) could D) will be able to

16- Yesterday, I looked everywhere _____ some shoes to wear _____ the wedding, but I couldn't find any suitable ones.

- A) at/in B) for/to
C) about/on D) into/at

17- They _____ what time we were going out and whether we had room in the car for them.

- A) told B) ordered
C) instructed D) wondered

18- I _____ at the sports club about twice a week and _____ jogging every morning.

- A) train/go
B) am training/had gone
C) was training/have gone
D) will train/went

19- A: This book is _____ Kathy's _____ Lucy's.

B: I think it must be Lucy's because Kathy said she'd lent hers to her brother.

- A) no longer/still B) both/and
C) either/or D) whether/nor

20-When I _____ on the television, the programme _____ already _____.

- A) turned/had ... started
B) turn/has ... been starting
C) have turned/will ... start
D) was turning/is ... starting

21- Just as I _____ my umbrella, the rain _____.

- A) have opened/had stopped
B) was opening/stopped
C) will open/has been stopped
D) open/is stopping

22- I never walk _____ the tunnel _____ night because it frightens me.

- A) under/in B) below/over
C) down/during D) through/at

23- We _____ out as soon as we've washed the dishes.

- A) will go B) went
C) had gone D) were going

24- You _____ touch those papers. They're mine and they're very important.

- A) don't have to B) wouldn't
C) couldn't D) mustn't

25- Mark said they'd be here no later than six thirty, _____?

- A) would he B) hadn't they
C) didn't he D) did they

26- The party _____ on Saturday because most of the guests can't come on Friday.

- A) is holding B) has held
C) is going to hold D) will be held

27- ____ go into town and see what that new shop is like.

- A) Let's B) Why don't we
C) Shall we D) Would you like

28- A: May I ____ these trousers, please?
B: Yes, certainly. The changing room is over there.

- A) break into B) look after
C) try on D) get into

29- She thinks she doesn't ____ anyone in her family, but I think she is like her mother.

- A) look for B) bring up
C) take after D) put out

30- Don't stay ____ the sun if you're burning. Move ____ the shade.

- A) in/into B) under/below
C) near/with D) on/around

31- You ____ bother washing those cups. They can go in the dishwasher.

- A) didn't B) needn't
C) mightn't D) can't

32- I ____ him several times at parties, but we ____ never ____.

- A) have seen/have ... been introduced
B) had seen/were ... introducing
C) will see/are ... introduced
D) see/will ... introduce

33- Hurry up with those bags! We ____ in five minutes.

- A) have left B) left
C) were leaving D) are leaving

34- After the third goal ____, we knew that our team ____.

- A) scored/was beating
B) has been scored/beat
C) was scored/had beaten
D) had been scored/was beaten

35- Because of the strike, the train passengers ____ by bus to their destination.

- A) were taken B) are taking
C) will take D) had taken

36- When Mrs Higgins ____ the school in 1992, she ____ there for twenty years.

- A) has left/teaches
B) left/had been teaching
C) leaves/will teach
D) had left/has been teaching

37- I ____ here since January and, probably, I ____ until August.

- A) have studied/continued
B) study/am going to continue
C) am studying/have been continuing
D) have been studying/will continue

38- Look how much faster she is than everyone else! She ____ the race easily. No one can catch her.

- A) had won B) is going to win
C) was winning D) has been winning

39- They ____ for about an hour when they ____ a puncture.

- A) drove/have had
B) are driving/will have
C) had been driving/had
D) will drive/are having

40- I'm sorry, but right now I ____ a word you ____.

- A) am not believing/say
B) haven't believed/will say
C) didn't believe/said
D) don't believe/are saying

GOOD LUCK

Choose the correct answer. (2.5 points for each)

- 1- **Don't eat any more sweets, or you'll be _____ to eat any dinner.**
 A) such a full B) the fullest
 C) so full D) too full
- 2- **When the meeting _____, the secretary _____ typing the report.**
 A) starts/didn't finish
 B) started/hadn't finished
 C) will start/won't finish
 D) had started/doesn't finish
- 3- **My Walkman _____ switched on all night, so now the batteries _____ out.**
 A) leaves/run
 B) has left/are running
 C) was left/have run
 D) is left/ran
- 4- **She _____ so many lies that, these days, hardly anyone _____ her.**
 A) told/was trusted
 B) tells/trusts
 C) will tell/was trusting
 D) is telling/has been trusting
- 5- **I warned him _____ so fast and _____ more care, but he just ignored me.**
 A) not driving/take
 B) don't drive/taking
 C) not to drive/to take
 D) not driven/took
- 6- **A: Have you _____ entered a competition?
 B: Yes, I regularly enter the crossword competitions in the newspapers, but _____, I haven't won anything.**
 A) already/until B) yet/now
 C) still/before D) ever/so far
- 7- **I expect she _____ the exam quite easy because she _____ for it for ages.**
 A) found/studies
 B) will find/has been studying
 C) has found/will study
 D) finds/is studying
- 8- **There are only a few sports _____ I really enjoy, and skiing is one of them.**
 A) who B) where
 C) when D) that
- 9- **If you _____ anything here by mistake, I _____ it on to you.**
 A) have left/will be sent
 B) would leave/must send
 C) leave/will send
 D) had been leaving/sent
- 10- **She doesn't play the violin _____ her sister, but she's improving.**
 A) better B) the best of
 C) too good D) as well as
- 11- **The central heating system hadn't been installed properly, so it kept _____ down.**
 A) breaking B) break
 C) broken D) to break
- 12- **I'd planned _____ to the theatre last night, but I was too tired _____ anything other than go to bed.**
 A) going/doing B) gone/done
 C) to go/to do D) go/do
- 13- **I don't believe _____ young children large amounts of pocket-money. They first have to learn how _____ small amounts wisely.**
 A) to give/spending
 B) for giving/spend
 C) giving/spent
 D) in giving/to spend

- 14- A: Do you think you could _____ your father to drive us to the cinema tomorrow?
B: Probably. I'll ask him this evening.
- A) get B) let
C) make D) have
- 15- Bungee-jumping looks very _____, but I don't think I'm brave enough to try it.
- A) excited B) exciting
C) to excite D) excite
- 16- Mandy doesn't appear _____ very happy these days. I wonder what's wrong with her.
- A) being B) to be
C) be D) been
- 17- You _____ more in class. You look fast asleep most of the time.
- A) are concentrating
B) must have concentrated
C) should concentrate
D) had to concentrate
- 18- The bags weren't _____ they looked, so I managed them on my own.
- A) as heavy as B) so heavy that
C) the heaviest D) heavy enough
- 19- I'm fed up _____ the same food every day. Why can't the canteen staff cook something different for a change?
- A) to eat B) with eating
C) from eating D) eaten
- 20- I'll let you _____ my dress as long as you promise _____ it back clean.
- A) borrow/to bring
B) to borrow/bring
C) borrowing/bringing
D) borrowed/brought
- 21- I tried for about an hour _____ the homework, but I couldn't get past the first question.
- A) doing B) do
C) to do D) done
- 22- Why don't you try _____ a few deep breaths before you go into the interview? It usually works for me when I feel nervous.
- A) to take B) taking
C) taken D) take
- 23- The burglars _____ in at about 12 o'clock. Look, that's when this clock, which was smashed during the break-in, stopped.
- A) should have broken
B) were breaking
C) might break
D) must have broken
- 24- The lecturer was speaking _____ the students at the back of the hall couldn't hear him.
- A) quietly enough B) so quietly that
C) too quiet for D) as quiet as
- 25- The children really enjoyed _____ after your cats while you were away last week.
- A) to look B) look
C) looked D) looking
- 26- A: Would anyone in any of the other classes like _____ us on the trip next week?
B: Yes, I'm sure they all would.
- A) to join B) joining
C) join D) joined
- 27- A: David worked late last night. The lights in his office were still on at half past ten.
B: No, it _____ David. He went out for dinner with some clients last night.
- A) may not be B) doesn't have to be
C) can't have been D) needn't be

28- A: Can I borrow that book from you?

B: You can if you like, but I thought it was _____ thing I'd ever read.

- A) so boring that B) the most boring
C) such a bored D) more bored

29- A: Oh, I feel really ill today.

B: Well, you _____ so much at the party last night.

- A) haven't been drinking
B) may not have drunk
C) shouldn't have drunk
D) mustn't drink

30- A: I need a copy of that report by the weekend.

B: Right. I'll speak to my secretary and have her _____ you one immediately.

- A) sent B) to send
C) sending D) send

31- I'm not surprised we missed the train. You drove _____ to get us to the station in time.

- A) too slowly B) much slower
C) the slowest D) so slowly that

32- A: Listen to this voice on the answering machine. Is it Mark's?

B: No, it _____ his. He told me that he'd never speak to a machine, even in an emergency!

- A) hasn't been B) couldn't be
C) needn't be D) wasn't

33- There's _____ difference in their ages _____ it's amazing that they get on so well.

- A) a bigger/than B) so big/that
C) such a big/that D) the biggest/than

34- How are we going to get Valerie _____ to the party without _____ the surprise?

- A) come/to spoil B) coming/spoil
C) coming/spoiling D) to come/spoiling

35- A: Excuse me Sir, but there's a man downstairs demanding _____ to you.

B: O.K. I'll be down in a minute.

- A) spoken B) to speak
C) speak D) speaking

36- It isn't necessary for you _____ the meeting tomorrow, so you can stay at home if you like.

- A) attend B) attending
C) attended D) to attend

37- The children _____ up and down on their beds, so we _____ hear the television properly.

- A) had jumped/shouldn't
B) have been jumping/needn't
C) were jumping/couldn't
D) are jumping/didn't have to

38- They _____ since the morning, so everything was ready when we _____.

- A) were cooking/had arrived
B) have cooked/will arrive
C) will cook/have arrived
D) had been cooking/arrived

39- It was getting cold in the garden, so we _____ inside before the barbecue was ready.

- A) had to go B) should go
C) must have gone D) need to go

40- I'm sorry _____ you, but this isn't a real diamond. It's absolutely valueless.

- A) told B) tell
C) to tell D) telling

GOOD LUCK

Choose the right answer. (2.5 points for each)

- 1- I went straight to bed when I got home _____ I was very tired.
- A) although B) while
C) in spite of D) because
- 2- She has bought lots of clothes _____ she started to work.
- A) since B) while
C) although D) when
- 3- John is acting very strangely these days. Do you know _____ his problem is?
- A) that B) what
C) when D) where
- 4- Last night, I suddenly began to feel unwell after dinner, _____ we had to cancel going to the cinema.
- A) because B) or
C) although D) so
- 5- If the price _____ a bit lower, we _____ to buy that car, but I'm afraid we can't.
- A) were/could afford
B) is/would afford
C) had been/can afford
D) would be/could have afforded
- 6- Tomorrow's meeting has been cancelled _____ the chairman's illness.
- A) when B) in spite of
C) until D) because of
- 7- Your cold _____ worse if you _____ your medicine regularly.
- A) got/wouldn't take
B) could have got/aren't taking
C) will get/don't take
D) have got/haven't taken
- 8- Michael resigned from his job _____ he was offered another with a higher salary.
- A) if B) because of
C) when D) that
- 9- He has prepared _____ well _____ he will certainly manage to pass the exam this time.
- A) more/than B) so/that
C) as/as D) both/and
- 10- _____ we discovered the burglary, we called the police.
- A) As soon as B) Until
C) Although D) While
- 11- Oh, I feel very ill. I wish I _____ so much.
- A) am not eating B) haven't eaten
C) don't eat D) hadn't eaten
- 12- Our teacher says that only the students _____ grades are lower than the limit will have to take this exam.
- A) that B) whose
C) whom D) which
- 13- Atatürk was one of the greatest leaders of the world _____ devoted their lives to their people's independence.
- A) Ø B) whose
C) who D) which

- 14- My eldest uncle, _____ has been staying with us since last week, is taking us out for a meal tonight.
- A) who B) that
C) whom D) ∅
- 15- Spain owns two groups of islands _____ are popular with tourists; the Canary Isles and the Balearic Islands.
- A) whose B) whom
C) where D) which
- 16- I really wish we _____ some research before we came here for our holiday. It's just awful!
- A) were doing B) had done
C) have done D) are doing
- 17- I tried to warn you, _____ you just ignored me.
- A) so B) but
C) either D) nor
- 18- I'm afraid I can't remember _____ I put the key.
- A) how B) what
C) where D) which
- 19- The Rocketts were shocked _____ they discovered that their house had been broken into.
- A) until B) although
C) while D) when
- 20- Our neighbours were playing the music very loudly, _____ I had to ask them to turn it down.
- A) but B) so
C) or D) either
- 21- _____ Mike _____ Jerry seems to be really interested in our proposal.
- A) Neither/nor B) Both/and
C) Either/but D) Such/that
- 22- I believe _____ horror films have a bad effect on children.
- A) what B) whom
C) that D) whose
- 23- One of the members _____ the chairman while he _____.
- A) will interrupt/spoke
B) have interrupted/is speaking
C) had interrupted/has spoken
D) interrupted/was speaking
- 24- I don't know _____ the party will be held on a weekday or at the weekend.
- A) whether B) that
C) when D) how many
- 25- Matthew, _____ mother has been seriously ill for some time, won't be able to come to the party.
- A) whom B) whose
C) that D) ∅
- 26- Do you remember _____ guests there were at Fred and Sue's wedding ceremony?
- A) whom B) what
C) how many D) what time
- 27- I wish I _____ so much money yesterday. Now I can't even afford a sandwich for lunch.
- A) didn't spend B) haven't spent
C) shouldn't spend D) hadn't spent

- 28- If you stopped smoking, you _____ so much.
A) hadn't coughed B) don't cough
C) aren't coughing D) wouldn't cough
- 29- The injured man _____ if he _____ the proper first aid.
A) wouldn't have died/had been given
B) didn't die/were being given
C) won't die/was going to give
D) might not die/would be given
- 30- It seems to me _____ we'll face terrible conditions on this expedition.
A) when B) that
C) what D) whether
- 31- He refused to tell us _____ it had taken him to finish the project.
A) where B) how many
C) why D) how long
- 32- Sally has to be in the office all day tomorrow, but she really wishes she _____ part in the protest march with us.
A) will be able to take
B) had taken
C) could take
D) has been taking
- 33- If the secretary _____ me how to use the computer, I _____ the report.
A) doesn't show/wasn't able to type
B) hadn't shown/couldn't have typed
C) wouldn't have shown/couldn't type
D) might not show/didn't type
- 34- We're going to build a small shed in our back garden, _____ we grow our own vegetables.
A) which B) whose
C) where D) that
- 35- Jack's younger sister, _____ I find very pretty, is applying for a job in our company.
A) whom B) that
C) \emptyset D) whose
- 36- The applicant had _____ excellent references _____ we immediately decided to employ her.
A) so/that B) more/than
C) many/than D) such/that
- 37- _____ my grandmother has become rather old now, she still insists on living on her own in a huge house.
A) Before B) Although
C) Until D) Because
- 38- I've just finished the book you gave me last week, _____ found it the best I've ever read.
A) so B) or
C) and D) but
- 39- When I _____ Jim a few hours ago, I _____ him your message.
A) see/would give
B) have seen/will give
C) will see/am giving
D) saw/gave
- 40- Lucy is _____ conceited _____ she never talks about anything but her achievements.
A) so/that B) as/as
C) both/and D) neither/nor

GOOD LUCK

QUIZ 4

Units 15-20

A- Choose the right answer to complete the passage. (2.5 points for each)

One day Mike (1)_____ a meal in a French restaurant when suddenly a young lady (2)_____ down next to him. He couldn't think (3)_____ she wanted. She (4)_____ very happy. Mike asked her what was (5)_____. "(6)_____ problem is ..." she began, but (7)_____ she stopped. It seemed she didn't find it (8)_____ to tell Mike about it. "My husband and I had decided to meet here for lunch at 12 o'clock. It's half past one now, but he (9)_____ hasn't arrived," she said (10)_____. "Well, don't you know (11)_____ he is? Can't you ring him up?" said Mike. "No, I can't," said the young lady. "And now I've had lunch and I can't pay the bill (12)_____ I've left my purse at home. You see, I've got (13)_____ money on me." "This story sounds as if I've heard it (14)_____, " Mike thought to (15)_____. He remembered his friend Chris, (16)_____ had told him about (17)_____ very similar (18)_____ this. Suddenly he had an idea. "Don't worry," he said. "I know the manager here. He's a very nice man. If you (19)_____ him (20)_____ you are and (21)_____ you live, he (22)_____ you send the money later." The young lady went very red. Trying (23)_____ happy, she said, "Oh, how silly of me. I've (24)_____ remembered. I've got my cheque book with (25)_____. I can pay after all!"

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 1- A) is having
C) has had | B) was having
D) had |
| 2- A) sat
C) had sat | B) was sitting
D) has been sitting |
| 3- A) why
C) what | B) when
D) that |
| 4- A) hasn't been looking
B) isn't looking
C) doesn't look
D) didn't look | |
| 5- A) mistake
C) error | B) wrong
D) incorrect |
| 6- A) Another
C) The | B) A
D) Any |
| 7- A) after
C) then | B) before
D) so |

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 8- A) easily
C) easier | B) easy
D) more easily |
| 9- A) still
C) already | B) even
D) since |
| 10- A) in advance
C) for a change | B) on purpose
D) at last |
| 11- A) how
C) where | B) what
D) who |
| 12- A) in spite of
C) although | B) because
D) so |
| 13- A) some
C) many | B) any
D) no |
| 14- A) ever
C) yet | B) never
D) before |
| 15- A) him
C) himself | B) her
D) herself |

- | | | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 16- A) who
C) that | B) whom
D) ∅ | 21- A) how
C) whom | B) why
D) where |
| 17- A) nothing
C) anyone | B) something
D) everyone | 22- A) had let
C) will let | B) was letting
D) is letting |
| 18- A) than
C) as | B) from
D) to | 23- A) looking
C) looked | B) to look
D) look |
| 19- A) are telling
C) were told | B) tell
D) had told | 24- A) just
C) still | B) but
D) so |
| 20- A) who
C) how | B) where
D) what | 25- A) mine
C) my | B) I
D) me |

B- Choose the right answer. (2.5 points for each)

- 26- _____, she thought the work was very interesting, but soon she began to get bored.
- A) In particular B) At first C) Out of luck D) Under control
- 27- I'll call you _____ Monday evening if I can get any further news _____ the meeting.
- A) at/for B) until/along C) on/about D) in/from
- 28- If you don't know the meaning of a word, you can always _____ it _____ in a dictionary.
- A) cross/out B) take/off C) turn/down D) look/up
- 29- The park was filled _____ excited children playing happily.
- A) with B) for C) about D) from
- 30- I visited lots of places _____ my stay abroad.
- A) while B) with C) during D) towards

(In questions 31-33, choose the **synonym** for the word in bold type.)

- 31- Our street is not **wide** enough for two cars to pass each other.
- A) broad B) narrow C) shallow D) straight

32- The police found a **deserted** car in the country. It could be Jack's.

- A) abandoned B) broken C) strange D) enormous

33- When she was a child, my sister used to be afraid of an **imaginary** monster.

- A) impolite B) unreal C) irregular D) insufficient

(In questions 34-36, choose the **opposite** of the word in bold type.)

34- Some parents are very **strict** with their children.

- A) considerate B) rough C) tolerant D) silent

35- It's rather **dangerous** to swim in this river because of the strong currents.

- A) safe B) unhealthy C) enjoyable D) difficult

36- Because of the **unpleasant** smell in the restaurant, we had to leave before we finished our meals.

- A) terrifying B) tasteless C) delicious D) nice

(In questions 37-40, choose the correct **form** of the words.)

37- I always read this newspaper because it gives the news _____.

- A) accuracy B) accurately C) accurate D) inaccurate

38- Mary's twin daughters are identical in _____ but quite different in personality.

- A) appearance B) appear C) disappear D) disappearance

39- I never insist on my son's eating a lot. I just give him _____ foods.

- A) nourish B) nourishment C) nourishing D) nourished

40- Many buildings were totally _____ in the fire.

- A) destruction B) destroyer C) destructive D) destroyed

GOOD LUCK

ELS-WORKSHEETS BOOK FOUR

ANSWER KEY

UNIT 1

- 1/1 (Pg. 1) 1.your/go 2.mustn't/are 3.him/his/himself 4.in/for 5.has been writing/has written
6.me/your/mine 7.Did/before 8.lost/one/players 9.stolen/outside/few 10.didn't/weren't
11.How much/Let's 12.Which/better 13.rude/more politely 14.myself/Would you like/mine
15.a/I'll/an 16.are there/not/them/last 17.too many/must 18.for/this/to seeing/her
19.some/nothing 20.standing/before/must be 21.hadn't/rang 22.fainted/received
23.What/which 24.will leave/arrives 25.would/were 26.unless 27.was operated 28.the
other/both/good/so/which
- 1/2 (Pg. 2) 1.My/me 2.No one/herself 3.each other 4.aren't/any/some 5.us/her
6.Have/seen/anywhere/somewhere 7.Whose/brother's 8.where/is sold/Didn't/ask
9.won/Neither/was 10.little/so
- 1/3 (Pg. 2) a) 1.the oldest 2.a 3.which 4.as 5.ago 6.When 7.began 8.in 9.still 10.from 11.long
12.take 13.them 14.Another 15.its 16.No
b) 1.T 2.F 3.F 4.T 5.F 6.T 7.T 8.F
- 1/4 (Pg. 3) 1.C 2.B 3.D 4.A 5.D 6.B 7.D 8.B 9.A 10.B 11.D 12.C 13.C 14.A 15.B 16.D
17.B 18.C 19.A 20.D 21.C 22.B 23.D 24.C 25.A 26.B 27.C 28.A 29.D 30.B
- 1/5 (Pg. 5) 1.the 2.a 3.in 4.sitting 5.bell 6.see (discover) 7.Under 8.aren't 9.can 10.The 11.an
12.of 13.his 14.moving 15.told 16.it 17.listening 18.still (just/only) 19.at 20.last
21.don't 22.ones (frames) 23.most 24.once 25.for 26.had 27.more 28.of 29.calm
30.not 31.from 32.too (very/that/so) 33.hadn't 34.down 35.to 36.later 37.there
38.burning 39.than 40.only
- 1/6 (Pg. 6) 1.with 2.at 3.with 4.of 5.for 6.to 7.on 8.on 9.about 10.for
- 1/7 (Pg. 6) 1.passed away 2.am setting out 3.takes after 4.put off 5.turned up/taken off 6.went down
7.went off/made for

UNIT 2

- 2/1 (Pg. 8) 1.feels (seems) 2.know 3.sounds (seems/looks) 4.think (suppose/believe/imagine/doubt)/
belongs 5.contain 6.look/taste 7.believe 8.understands (remembers)
- 2/2 (Pg. 9) 1.need 2.tastes 3.Are/having/have to 4.am packing/hate/want 5.is working 6.is seeing
7.contains 8.is working/is looking 9.works 10.live/is living 11.Do/remember/think/starts
12.is playing/is going/Do/want
- 2/3 (Pg. 9) 1.looks 2.has 3.Does/include 4.are/doing/am not actually eating/am just tasting
5.Do/know/means/don't/ask/knows 6.is spending/sounds 7.thinks
8.do/think/weights/says/don't believe 9.does/feel (is/feeling) 10.feel
11.does/belong/claims/am taking 12.is/crawling/is looking
- 2/4 (Pg. 10) 1.takes after 2.is taking 3.smells 4.are having 5.is organising 6.are hiding 7.advise 8.are
decorating 9.enjoy 10.eat 11.am going 12.buy
- 2/5 (Pg. 10) 1.are/giving 2.arrives 3.are celebrating 4.send 5.are/laughing 6.is interviewing 7.helps
8.is flying 9.plays 10.sneezes 11.argue 12.are/watering
- 2/6 (Pg. 11) 1.costs/does/include 2.does/mean/is almost surrounded/(is) attached 3.is being installed
4.is being delivered 5.are/looking/is demonstrating/are watching 6.is telling/am trying 7.is
being decorated 8.are widely grown/are usually harvested 9.are increasing/are finding (find)
10.does/depart/Are/staying 11.appears/don't agree 12.are/being weighed/are weighing
- 2/7 (Pg. 11) a) are living/are looking/works (writes)/has/is writing/is giving
b) work/makes/like/find/live/belongs/go/am walking/want

UNIT 3

- 3/1 (Pg. 12) a) a.will b.simple present c.going to or present cont. d.will e.going to
b) 1.c 2.c 3.a 4.b 5.d 6.e
- 3/2 (Pg. 13) 1.c/am taking 2.e/will get 3.a/are going to help 4.g/will be 5.d/will cancel/take 6.b/are
going to burst (will burst) 7.f/departs
- 3/3 (Pg. 13) 1.will try 2.is going to bring (is bringing)/won't turn 3.are staying (are going to stay)/are going
4.will be 5.will increase 6.are going to be/will ... get/will give 7.is taking (is going to take) 8.
Are/going to buy (Are/buying)/am going to get 9.Is/going to make 10.finish
- 3/4 (Pg. 15) c) 1.washing powder 2.shampoo 3.a mobile phone 4.soap 5.a car 6.toothpaste 7.perfume
8.moisturiser
- 3/5 (Pg. 15) Mike: 1.h 2.i 3.e 4.j 5.c 6.g
Judy: 1.d 2.b 3.a 4.f 5.k

ELS-WORKSHEETS

UNIT 4

- 4/1 (Pg. 18) a) b.past cont. c.past cont. d.simple past e.past cont. f.past cont. g.simple past
b) 1.c 2.a 3.d 4.f 5.b 6.g 7.e
- 4/2 (Pg. 19) 1.were/talking/came/sent 2.Did/sec/was wearing/was given 3.encountered/were filming
4.was used/was being shot 5.was being followed/was constantly looking/seemed 6.were all
searched/were allowed 7.was snowing/woke/decided 8.was looking 9.was studying/was
sleeping 10.finished/handed 11.cost 12.wasn't sleeping/was listening
- 4/3 (Pg. 19) 1.was watching 2.was paid 3.was climbing 4.put 5.advised 6.did/hurt/was
running/tripped 7.carried 8.was stopped/was driving 9.was cooking 10.were chatting
11.fell 12.was announced
- 4/4 (Pg. 20) a) 1.Alex and Tim were in the canteen talking busily. 2.The children are on the beach making a
sand castle. 3.The students were in the laboratory carrying out an experiment. 4.Mum was
in the living room lying on the sofa. 5.Mr Griffin is in Rome attending a conference.
b) 1.He was at the club playing tennis. 2.She's in her office interviewing an applicant. 3.He's in
his room putting away his toys. 4.I was in Izmir visiting my parents.
- 4/5 (Pg. 20) Solution: The Cook, because first of all she said she had woken to the sound of shooting and then
she said the shooting had happened soon after the housekeeper had gone past her room. But if
she didn't wake until the shooting, how did she know that the housekeeper had gone past her
room?
- 4/6 (Pg. 21) a) 1.were driving 2.were driving 3.appeared 4.was flying 5.tried (was trying) 6.discovered
7.weren't working 8.was going 9.put 10.fell 11.was rising 12.reached 13.disappeared
14.drove 15.got 16.went 17.remembered 18.discovered 19.no longer needed 20.didn't
wear 21.was driving 22.disappeared 23.woke
b) 1.F 2.F 3.T 4.F 5.T 6.T 7.F 8.T 9.F

UNIT 5

- 5/1 (Pg. 22) a) 1.d 2.a 3.e 4.e 5.c 6.b
- 5/2 (Pg. 23) 1.haven't tasted 2.has just fixed 3.have been trying/have only written 4.have been playing
5.has been smoking 6.have been working 7.have/tidied 8.has scratched 9.have changed
10.has been raining 11.have/known 12.has been looking/hasn't found/has tried
- 5/3 (Pg. 23) 1.have cut 2.have told 3.has made 4.have finished 5.have been listening 6.has crashed
7.have been waiting 8.have been showing 9.has belonged 10.has been writing 11.have been
working 12.have read
- 5/4 (Pg. 24) a) 1.past cont. 2.p.p.cont. 3.p.p.simp. 4.p.p.simp. 5.simp. past 6.simp. past 7.p.p.simp.
8.p.p.cont. 9.p.p.simp. 10.simp. past 11.past cont. 12.simp. past
b) 1.visited 2.have tried 3.was skiing 4.have been skiing 5.have only known 6.has moved
7.moved 8.understood 9.opened/took 10.has been crying 11.have torn 12.was still checking
- 5/5 (Pg. 25) a.past perfect b.simple past c.simple past d.past perfect
1.b 2.d 3.a 4.c
- 5/6 (Pg. 25) 1.was/felt/had taken (took) 2.was/told/had never been 3.opened/realised/wasn't/had put
4.announced (had announced)/rushed 5.fell/broke 6.had researched (researched)/sat
7.played/arrived 8.had never heard/mentioned
- 5/7 (Pg. 26) 1.had slept 2.have/made 3.had/started 4.have ordered 5.Have/changed 6.had/washed
7.had warned 8.have met 9.Have/received 10.have asked 11.had decided 12.had/turned
- 5/8 (Pg. 26) 1.because 2.but 3.so 4.before 5.After 6.and 7.while 8.until 9.what 10.that 11.Then
12.Just as 13.when
- 5/9 (Pg. 27) 1.have been gossiping 2.have been ironing 3.had been dancing 4.have been wearing 5.has
been picking 6.has been staring 7.has been ringing 8.had been living 9.had/been playing
10.had been planting 11.have been typing 12.had been waiting 13.had been fighting 14.has
been sleeping
- 5/10 (Pg. 28) 1.was wearing 2.hadn't been feeling 3.was having 4.had/been skiing 5.had/been crying
6.were polishing/were cleaning 7.hadn't been growing 8.had been looking 9.had been working
10.was/starting
- 5/11 (Pg. 28) 1.Was/waving/was crying 2.has been waiting/is getting 3.am bringing/has been longing
4.was driving/was raining 5.had been preparing 6.have/been doing/have been clearing
7.is/sitting/is sulking 8.had been travelling 9.was ringing 10.was boiling 11.wasn't coming/
has been saying 12.had been discussing 13.is crying/was sleeping 14.have been trying
- 5/12 (Pg. 29) 1.was still being decorated 2.have been lying 3.was made 4.was looking 5.had/been put out
6.is going to be 7.hadn't been working 8.get/is absolutely pouring 9.had already been
knocked 10.are walking 11.has just been handed 12.had been cycling 13.will have/is
14.have/been/went/came 15.had/was driving 16.is sleeping/got 17.never complains/have
ever met 18.is raining/has been raining 19.is going to fall/aren't 20.have been thinking/have
finally decided/am going to take/travel 21.is having 22.have finished/do/want 23.are printed
24.was sold 25.sec/will probably give

ELS-WORKSHEETS

- 5/13 (Pg. 30) a) 1.left 2.wasn't 3.had 4.had flown 5.had sailed 6.had been specially built 7.was fitted 8.(was) stocked 9.was eating 10.sleeping 11.changing 12.had done 13.didn't want 14.decided (had decided) 15.had done 16.wanted 17.seemed 18.had even celebrated (even celebrated) 19.had rounded 20.entered 21.changed 22.was smashed 23.managed 24.arrived 25.had been sailing 26.was 27.had left 28.was caught 29.almost capsized 30.was lying (had been lying) 31.happened 32.was done 33.took 34.had been 35.had struggled (had been struggling) 36.had been sent 37.found 38.was rolling 39.was 40.left (had left) 41.were waiting
- b) 1.forerunner 2.single-handed 3.self-steering device 4.voyage 5.clipper 6.dozens 7.capsize 8.struggle 9.patrol ship
- c) 1.F 2.F 3.T 4.F 5.F 6.T 7.F 8.F 9.T 10.T 11.F 12.T

REVISION TEST 1

- 1.A 2.D 3.C 4.D 5.C 6.A 7.B 8.C 9.B 10.A 11.C 12.A 13.B 14.C
15.B 16.C 17.D 18.D 19.C 20.A 21.D 22.C 23.B 24.A 25.A

UNIT 6

- 6/1 (Pg. 35) 2.Someone in the house may/might/could have killed him, or the murderer may/might/could have come in through the window. 3.The murderer must have known where he kept the key. 4.The murderer may/might/could have killed Mr Scott for the money, or he or she may not/might not have wanted to make the real reason known. 5.He or she may not/might not have wanted to leave any evidence behind. 6.She can't/couldn't have killed her husband herself. She may/might/could have hired someone to do it for her. 7.The gardener may/might/could have killed him to get revenge. 8.He can't/couldn't have been in the house at the time.
- 6/2 (Pg. 36) 1.may (might/could) have found 2.must be 3.can't (couldn't) have taken 4.can't (couldn't) be/may not (might not) have taken 5.must have forgotten 6.may (might/could) be 7.may not (might not) like 8.must have been sold 9.can't (couldn't) have been stolen 10.may not (might not) know 11.may (might/could) have overslept/may (might/could) be 12.must be 13.may (might/could) be 14.may (might/could) have been 15.must have been made/may (might/could) have been imported
- 6/3 (Pg. 37) 1.He should have positioned his car... 2.He shouldn't have ignored... 3.He shouldn't have followed the car in front so closely. 4.He shouldn't have driven... 5.He should have passed slow-moving vehicles more quickly. 6.He should have looked out for... 7.He shouldn't have changed lanes so often. 8.He should have dipped his headlights... 9.He shouldn't have driven... 10.He should have put out... 11.He should have slowed down... 12.He shouldn't have driven...
- 6/4 (Pg. 38) 1.should be eaten 2.shouldn't have criticised 3.shouldn't criticise 4.should have told 5.shouldn't have been put 6.shouldn't eat 7.shouldn't have invited 8.should be encouraged 9.shouldn't talk 10.should have been informed 11.shouldn't look/should try 12.shouldn't have sold
- 6/5 (Pg. 38) 1.with/about/in 2.from/in/in 3.with (by) 4.at/on 5.for/On 6.at/in

UNIT 7

- 7/1 (Pg. 39) 2.-ing/-ed 3.-ing/-ed 4.-ing/-ed 5.-ed/-ing 6.-ing/-ed 7.-ed/-ing 8.-ing/-ed
- 7/2 (Pg. 40) 1.embarrassing/embarrassed 2.charming 3.interested 4.encouraging/discouraging 5.disappointed 6.disappointing 7.disgusting 8.worrying 9.worried 10.depressed 11.entertaining 12.amazed/amazing

UNIT 8

- 8/1 (Pg. 42) 1.This box is big enough to hold all these books. 2.This knife is too blunt to cut the meat with. 3.You're working hard enough to pass your exams. 4.You're tall enough to reach the top shelf. 5.That dress is too expensive for me to afford. 6.She isn't experienced enough to run the office on her own. 7.You're walking too slowly to catch the train. 8.Dad is too tired to take us to the amusement park.
- 8/2 (Pg. 42) 1.The road wasn't wide enough for two cars to pass each other. 2.You're driving too slowly to get there on time. 3.She is too weak to stand the harsh climate there. 4.The room wasn't quiet enough for me to concentrate on my work. 5.These scissors are too blunt to cut this material with. 6.She didn't speak loudly enough for the people at the back to hear.
- 8/3 (Pg. 43) 1.She was such a successful student that she came top... 2.Her house is so big that it takes her... 3.Our English teacher speaks so quickly that we can't... 4.It was such hot weather that it was impossible... 5.The play was so boring that I didn't go... 6.It was such an interesting book that I couldn't... 7.They are such cheap shoes that I can afford... 8.The exam was so difficult that I could only...
- 8/4 (Pg. 44) 1.He was so tall that he was... 2.They are such rude people that nobody... 3.These are such nice shirts that you... 4.The play was so successful that the audience... 5.They were such delicious dishes that we... 6.The weather was so awful that we...
- 8/5 (Pg. 44) 1.c 2.a 3.g 4.f 5.b 6.d 7.e
- 8/6 (Pg. 45) 1.h 2.a 3.g 4.c 5.b 6.f 7.d 8.e

ELS-WORKSHEETS

UNIT 9

- 9/1 (Pg. 46) 1.Swimming 2.Winning 3.Eating 4.Driving 5.Testing 6.Finding 7.Playing 8.Staring
9.Diving 10.Wearing
- 9/4 (Pg. 47) 1.in finding 2.for interrupting 3.with listening 4.in passing 5.for helping 6.of leaving 7.to
going 8.of waiting 9.of lying 10.of being 11.at fixing/at cooking 12.of staying 13.about
going 14.for tearing
- 9/5 (Pg. 48) a) 1.in learning 2.of taking 3.on swimming 4.in finding 5.to receiving
b) 1.in spending 2.for swimming 3.of being 4.for doing 5.on participating 6.about parking
7.to hearing
- 9/6 (Pg. 49) 1.kept talking 2.admitted stealing/denied knocking 3.practise speaking 4.can't help feeling
5.considering holding/postpone celebrating 6.suggest going 7.quit smoking 8.can't stand
listening 9.Avoid using 10.stop making 11.don't mind doing
- 9/7 (Pg. 50) 1.to do 2.doing 3.to do 4.doing 5.doing 6.doing 7.to do 8.to do 9.to do 10.doing 11.to do
12.to do 13.doing 14.doing 15.to do 16.to do 17.doing 18.to do 19.to do 20.doing 21.doing
22.to do 23.to do 24.doing 25.doing 26.to do 27.to do 28.doing 29.doing 30.to do
- 9/8 (Pg. 51) 1.to turn/to switch 2.to put/standing 3.lending 4.to buy 5.to pour/swimming (to swim) 6.to
keep/to make (making) 7.listening (to listen) 8.to get (getting) 9.cutting/to go 10.to travel
(travelling)/studying (to study)
- 9/9 (Pg. 52) 1.opening 2.cleaning 3.locking 4.to apply 5.to pick up 6.losing 7.opening 8.to be 9.to
do 10.to talk 11.staying 12.to touch (touching) 13.to qualify 14.to take 15.having 16.to
answer 17.to cook 18.writing 19.not to go 20.to enter 21.to babysit 22.to shout 23.not
to know 24.taking/stealing 25.asking
- 9/10 (Pg. 53) 1.looking 2.to see 3.to do 4.to find 5.not to pass 6.about taking 7.in getting 8.laughing
9.invite 10.choose (to choose)/to get 11.to borrow 12.to eating 13.of going 14.to
have/crying 15.to defrost 16.to turn 17.for losing 18.to leave 19.to seeing 20.to find
21.working 22.hiring 23.about flying 24.to reserve 25.stay

UNIT 10

- 10/2 (Pg. 54) 1.have had a swimming-pool built 2.have had all the window frames changed 3.have had a
workshop constructed 4.have had a wooden fence put up 5.have had the attic converted
6.have had a fireplace built
- 10/3 (Pg. 55) b) 3.Did/have it mended 4.mended it 5.Did/put them in 6.had them put in 7.painted the
frames and the doors 8.had it installed 9.checked the wiring 10.had it laid 11.made the
new curtains and tablecloths 12.had the cupboards fitted 13.hung the wallpaper 14.had
the television repaired 15.made the new notice-board
- 10/4 (Pg. 56) a) 1.to write 2.to wash 3.to iron 4.to polish 5.to pick/up 6.to tidy
10/8 (Pg. 59) 1.to make 2.fitted 3.stay 4.painted 5.to lend 6.done 7.to make
8.tested 9.stay 10.go/stay 11.mend 12.borrow/cleaned 13.retake 14.to let/leave

REVISION TEST 2

- 1.B 2.D 3.B 4.C 5.D 6.B 7.C 8.B 9.D 10.A 11.C 12.A 13.A 14.D 15.C 16.D
17.A 18.B 19.D 20.A 21.A 22.B 23.C 24.D 25.A 26.B 27.C 28.D 29.A 30.C 31.B 32.B
33.A 34.C 35.B 36.C 37.D 38.A 39.B 40.D

TEST YOUR VOCABULARY

- 1.C 2.D 3.B 4.A 5.B 6.C 7.D 8.D 9.C 10.B 11.D 12.A 13.C 14.A 15.C 16.C
17.B 18.D 19.A 20.C 21.A 22.B 23.D 24.C 25.B

UNIT 11

- 11/1 (P.65) 1.The teacher who/that teaches us science is nice. 2.I thanked the man who/that rescued...
3.The car which/that crashed into the lamp-post had to... 4.The cows which/that were in the
field next to our house suddenly got... 5.I like those people who/that express... 6.Films
which/that are shown during children's viewing hours shouldn't include... 7.The lorry
which/that was carrying our furniture broke down... 8.The zoo-keeper shouted at the children
who/that were trying...
- 11/2 (P.66) 1.The bread which/that/Ø I bought at the baker's just an hour ago is very stale. 2.I really like the
bread which/that is baked... 3.The woman who/that was knocked down by a lorry yesterday
was a journalist. 4.I must send a thank-you letter to the people who/whom/that/Ø I stayed with
during the conference. 5.Do you know the girl who/whom/that/Ø I was talking to just now?
6.Do you remember the name of the film which/that/Ø we watched together... 7.Will you go to
see the play which/that is going to be staged by the... 8.I can't stand the girl who/whom/that/Ø
I share my dormitory room with.

ELS-WORKSHEETS

- 11/3 (P.67) 1.The house which/that/Ø Judy has just rented is very big. 2.The balcony where my husband feeds the pigeons gets very dirty. 3.A cemetery is a place where the dead are buried. 4.The cemetery which/that is just opposite our house is very-well kept. 5.I didn't like the house which/that/Ø the estate agent showed to us this morning. 6.The house where Atatürk was born is in Selonica. 7.What are the names of the countries which/that occupied Turkey... 8.The USA is a country where the population is... 9.Spain is the country which/that I'd like to see most. 10.The room where the meeting is going to be held is on the... 11.The room which/that/Ø we're using as a bedroom for our guests is not very big. 12.A huge number of policemen have been positioned around the square where the demonstration is going to be held.
- 11/4 (P.68) 1.That's the man whose car was stolen... 2.Do you recognize the woman who/that is walking... 3.I've put your bank book in the cupboard where I keep all my important belongings. 4.The shoes which/that are in the shop window don't look very... 5.I can't remember the name of the woman who/whom/that/Ø I met at Suzie's party. 6.What's the name of the politician whose son is a... 7.I'll use the cup which/that is next... 8.I haven't seen the film which/that/Ø everybody is talking about at the moment. 9.I took the jacket whose sleeve was torn to be repaired. 10.Let's go to the restaurant where we went with Kathy and Marcus. 11.I hope we don't see the shop assistant who/whom/that/Ø I had an argument with yesterday. 12.I'd like to visit the city where my father was born one day.
- 11/5 (P.69) 1.C 2.C/D 3.D 4.B/C/D 5.D 6.C 7.A 8.B 9.A 10.A/C 11.A/B 12.A 13.B/C 14.B

UNIT 12

- 12/1 (P.71) 1.B 2.D 3.B/C 4.D 5.A 6.C 7.D 8.B 9.A/C 10.A/C/D 11.A 12.A/C 13.D 14.C 15.B 16.C
- 12/2 (P.72) **defining:** 2-4-7-9-11 **non-defining:** 1-3-5-6-8-10-12
"that" is only possible in 4-7-11
- 12/3 (P.72) 1.which/that/Ø 2.where 3.which 4.which/that/Ø 5.who/whom/that/Ø 6.who/whom 7.who/that 8.who
- 12/4 (P.73) 1.We climbed to the top of the hill, where we got a wonderful view of the city. 2.Our headmaster, whose wife is Head of Maths, is retiring... 3.What do you call the person who/that arranges funerals? 4.The people whose son I've been teaching since last year are very friendly. 5.We don't really like our personnel manager, who came here... 6.My watch, which my parents gave me years ago, doesn't keep... 7.I'd like to introduce you to Michelle, who/whom I play tennis with at the weekends. 8...I want to settle in a town where there is no pollution and no traffic. 9.I've always wanted to go to Venice, where there are no roads, but only canals. 10.Why don't we sit in the front living room, which we've just had redecorated. 11.We managed to sell our old car, whose doors were so... 12.The bus which/that goes direct to the centre from our house is... 13.I took the children to the park in Rose Avenue, where they had a lovely... 14.Amanda, whose husband is away on business at the moment, is coming... 15.The apple tree at the bottom of our garden, which was there when we bought the house, always looks... 16.The vegetables which/that are sold at our local greengrocer's are always fresh.
- 12/5 (P.74) 2.Venus 3.Earth 4.Mars 5.Jupiter 6.Saturn 7.Uranus 8.Neptune 9.Pluto
- 12/6 (P.75) 2...the Allied Forces, which won the war, occupied Turkey. 3.The Ottoman State, which had become weak because of the wars, couldn't... 4.Mustafa Kemal, who knew that the Turkish nation wanted to live independently, opposed... 5...to Anatolia and unite the people, who were fighting the enemy, but who were not organized. 6...on Bandırma Boat, which was going to... 7...to Erzurum and Sivas, where he held meetings... 8.The delegates, who agreed to fight the enemy, decided to form... 9...came to Ankara, where he was... 10...Assembly of Turkey, which held its first session on April 23rd 1920, chose Mustafa Kemal... 11... a government, which immediately started... 12.Turkish soldiers, who fought bravely... drove out... 13.This war, which lasted four years, was called... 14...the Treaty of Lausanne, which determined our... 15...Assembly, which abolished sultanate, declared the republic. 16.Then Atatürk, whose aim was to create a modern Turkey, concentrated... 17...was the introduction of secularism, which gave Turkey its national identity. 18...to this GREAT soldier and statesman, who fought and worked for his country...

UNIT 13

- 13/1 (P.77) 1.what Mary has 2.whether/if Mike is interested in football (or not) 3.whether/if we have to 4.where she keeps 5.what happened here 6.what the time is 7.what time it is 8.whether/if the party will be held 9.whether/if she can handle 10.who that girl is 11.whose car that is 12.whether/if they will serve 13.how many people have applied so far 14.whether/if she is good at 15.when your parents are coming 16.whether/if Michael passed 17.whether/if this bus goes 18.how she got that job 19.how high Mount Everest is 20.what the height of Mount Everest is

ELS-WORKSHEETS

- 13/2 (P.78)** 1.which platform the train to Ankara leaves from 2.whether/if children are allowed... 3.how I can get to... 4.what my mistakes in the exam were 5.whether/if the film is suitable... 6.who I should see... 7.when the manager will be... 8.whether/if the manager dealt with... 9.whether/if the banks are going to be... 10.what time the conference starts 11.how long it normally takes to... 12.which diseases I have to be... 13.whether/if you've received my application... 14.when the results will be made...
- 13/3 (P.79)** 1.Why was David late.../why David was late... 2.Which coat is Susan's?/which coat is Susan's 3.How did she get that.../how she got that... 4.Who volunteered to bring.../who volunteered to bring... 5.Who is Veronica going out with?/who Veronica is going out with 6.Who did the manager send to.../who the manager sent to... 7.How often do Alice and Jake usually go.../how often Alice and Jake usually go... 8.Where did she go.../where she went... 9.Whose daughter won first prize.../whose daughter won first prize... 10.How wide is this road?/how wide this road is
- 13/4 (P.80)** 1.B 2.D 3.C 4.D 5.A 6.C 7.B 8.D 9.C 10.B 11.D 12.C 13.C 14.A 15.D 16.C 17.D 18.A
- 13/5 (P.81)** 3.who the country's neighbours are 4.where the country's name comes from 5.how long the country was ruled as a colony 6.when the country gained independence 7.what Mexico's highest mountain is 8.what the height of Orizaba is (or how high Orizaba is) 9.what the country's climate is like 10.which animals are found in the country 11.what Mexico's natural resources are 12.how much of the total area is suitable for farming 13.how much of the land forests cover 14.what the country's population was in 1994 15.how many of the people live in cities and towns 16.what the nation's largest city and what its capital is 17.what Mexico City's population was in 1990 18.how much of the population is literate 19.how many daily newspapers are published in the country and how many of them have their headquarters in the capital 20.how many television and radio stations there are in the country

UNIT 14

- 14/2 (P.85)** 1.calls 2.had 3.wouldn't have got bored 4.wouldn't have been 5.didn't have to 6.weren't (wasn't) 7.will earn 8.would have 9.had been 10.are not 11.had told 12.wouldn't have had 13.is 14.go 15.would employ 16.would have paid 17.had booked 18.doesn't get
- 14/3 (P.86)** 1.If I didn't have to.../I could (would be able to) watch... 2.If Dad is free.../we can ask... 3.You wouldn't have missed.../if you hadn't got up late 4.He wouldn't make so many silly.../if he took... 5.She wouldn't have caught.../if she hadn't gone... 6.The boss will dismiss you if you keep... 7.She would pass.../if she weren't (wasn't)... 8.If we knew.../we could (would be able to) visit... 9.Phil will change.../if he gets... 10.If she had called.../the fire wouldn't have got 11.Mr Eames would give.../if he weren't (wasn't) so mean 12.If someone had helped.../he wouldn't have had to work... 13.You could get.../if you could speak... 14.If you had got the car serviced.../wouldn't have broken... 15.I would lend him some money if he paid...
- 14/6 (P.89)** 1...he had a car 2...he had got a promotion... 3...he weren't (wasn't) so forgetful 4...he hadn't forgotten to phone... 5...he could have gone (had been able to go) 6...he could go... 7...he could go out more often 8...he had studied... 9...he had had time
- 14/7 (P.89)** 1.could help/wouldn't take 2.had taken/wouldn't have been 3.had been born 4.had noticed/wouldn't have had to 5.didn't have to/wouldn't have to 6.were (was)/would be able to 7.were (was)/wouldn't die 8.had put/wouldn't have had 9.had chosen/would look

UNIT 15

- 15/1 (P.91)** 1.and 2.but 3.or 4.because 5.or/but 6.so 7.and/so 8.because
- 15/2 (P.91)** 1.or 2.Either/or 3.Neither/nor 4.after 5.if 6.As soon as 7.until 8.unless 9.Just as 10.The more/the more 11.so/that 12.When
- 15/3 (P.92)** 1.The book was so interesting that I couldn't... 2.I enjoy travelling overseas, but I wouldn't even... 3.When I saw them, they'd just finished... 4.I always brush my teeth before I go to bed. 5.Both my brother and I enjoy all... 6.There was very little demand for the tickets, so they... 7.She telephoned me last night and invited me to a concert. 8.I doubt that he'll want to come with us because he doesn't really like opera. 9.I won't see him again until he gets back... 10.While I was doing the washing-up, I cut... 11.He has such a huge selection of books that I'm sure... 12.As soon as we finished work, we rushed to... 13.The play we saw was neither well-written nor well-acted. 14.It's not surprising that she won first prize in the competition because the painting she did... 15.Either a book or a computer game will make...
- 15/4 (P.93)** 1.because 2.although 3.although 4.because 5.Although 6.because 7.Because
- 15/5 (P.93)** 1.She didn't get the job because she wasn't... 2.Although we missed the train, we still managed... 3.She gets ill very frequently although she's very careful... 4.I'd really like to do something for him because he was... 5.Although he played brilliantly, he didn't... 6.Because the two cars collided with great force, no one survived... 7.The video didn't record the film I wanted to see because there was... 8.Although she won't actually attend the conference, she is going to...

ELS-WORKSHEETS

15/6 (P.94) 1.Although 2.In spite of 3.because 4.Because of 5.Because 6.In spite of 7.Because of 8.In spite of 9.Although 10.because 11.although 12.Because of

REVISION TEST 3

1.B 2.C 3.D 4.B 5.D 6.C 7.B 8.D 9.A 10.C 11.A 12.C 13.D 14.B 15.A
16.D 17.A 18.C 19.B 20.A 21.A 22.D 23.B 24.D 25.C 26.A 27.D 28.A 29.D 30.B

UNIT 16

- 16/1 (P.97) 1.from 2.to 3.in 4.of 5.in 6.over 7.from 8.to 9.In 10.over 11.in 12.in 13.in 14.in 15.above 16.under 17.by 18.On 19.on 20.off 21.into 22.on 23.on 24.out 25.to 26.of 27.before 28.with 29.into 30.after 31.in 32.for 33.to 34.of 35.on 36.on 37.of 38.until 39.For 40.across 41.on 42.after 43.over
- 16/2 (P.98) 1. Into 2.In 3.Since 4.For 5.With 6.At 7.During 8.Along 9.In 10.in/on 11.In 12.to 13.On (For) 14.For 15.On 16.By 17.On 18.On
- 16/3 (P.98) 1.from 2.for/at (in) 3.from 4.about/with 5.to/for 6.with 7.of/in 8.on/by 9.in
- 16/4 (P.99) a)without b)for c)on d)in e)by f)at g)without h)at i)for j)at k)under l)in
b)1.At last 2.in a hurry 3.in/pain 4.at least 5.without doubt 6.at first 7.under control 8.on the whole 9.by mistake 10.without delay 11.for a change 12.for instance
- 16/5 (P.100) a) 1.c 2.b 3.j 4.h 5.d 6.i 7.e 8.g 9.a 10.f
b)1.Look out 2.broke into 3.go with 4.take off 5.put on 6.hand/in 7.call off 8.lay down 9.came across 10.cross/out
- 16/6 (P.101) 1.get over 2.bring up 3.take after 4.blew up 5.turned down 6.held up 7.turn up 8.put out 9.ran (bumped) into 10.put off 11.Carry on (Go on) 12.takes off 13.broken down 14.find out

UNIT 17

- 17/1 (P.102) 1.mountaineer 2.politicians 3.translator 4.inventor 5.cyclists 6.diver 7.scientist 8.waiter 9.librarian 10.conqueror 11.violinist 12.employer
- 17/2 (P.103) 1.depth 2.width 3.drought 4.growth 5.frost 6.warmth 7.strength 8.heat 9.truth 10.thought
- 17/3 (P.103) 1.repetition 2.competition 3.production 4.reflection 5.attraction 6.persuasion 7.declaration 8.consideration 9.cancellation 10.application 11.division 12.invasion 13.resignation 14.expansion 15.identification 16.hesitation
- 17/4 (P.104) 1.darkness 2.argument 3.performance 4.advertisement 5.payment 6.resemblance 7.generosity 8.kindness 9.density 10.ability 11.intelligence 12.appointment 13.obedience 14.development 15.eagerness 16.announcement
- 17/5 (P.104) 1.recovery 2.fluency 3.freedom 4.neighbourhood 5.friendship 6.arrival 7.departure 8.championship 9.signature 10.honesty 11.pleasure 12.accuracy 13.failure 14.partnership
- 17/6 (P.105) a) 1.muddy 2.curly 3.healthy 4.wavy 5.watery 6.salty 7.juicy 8.greedy
b) 1.tasty 2.rusty 3.hasty 4.faulty 5.risky 6.shiny
- 17/7 (P.105) 1.drinkable 2.edible (eatable) 3.avoidable 4.audible 5.visible 6.believable 7.divisible 8.bearable 9.tolerable 10.countable
- 17/8 (P.106) 1.obedient 2.wise 3.magical 4.passionate 5.advantageous 6.applicable 7.slippery 8.anxious 9.coastal 10.logical 11.ambitious 12.reasonable 13.dangerous 14.reparable 15.urgent 16.stormy
- 17/9 (P.106) -ful: 1-5-6-15-17 -less: 7-10-18 Both -ful and -less: 2-3-4-8-9-11-12-13-14-16
- 17/10 (P.107) 1.lively 2.bloody 3.icy 4.monthly 5.daily 6.windy 7.orderly 8.friendly 9.greasy 10.cowardly 11.yearly 12.greedy 13.rainy 14.costly
- 17/11 (P.107) a) 1.charming/charmingly 2.dangerous/dangerously 3.elegant/elegantly 4.noisy/noisily 5.successful/successfully 6.foolish/foolishly 7.fortunate/fortunately 8.angry/angrily 9.occasional/occasionally
b) 1.Fortunately 2.noisy 3.dangerous 4.successfully 5.occasionally 6.foolish 7.angry
- 17/12 (P.108) 1.application 2.choice 3.demonstrators 4.courageously 5.anxiety 6.noisy 7.danger 8.different 9.carelessly 10.arrival 11.successfully 12.delivery 13.resemblance 14.departure 15.solution 16.natural 17.slippery 18.famous
- 17/13 (P.109) 1.a)courageous b)encouraged c)encouragement 2.a)ability b)disabled c)unable 3.a)products b)Production c)producer 4.a)uncomfortable b)comfortably c)discomfort 5.a)differ b)difference c)differently 6.a)admiration b)admirers c)admiringly
- 17/14 (P.110) 1.D 2.B 3.C 4.D 5.B 6.A 7.A 8.B 9.D 10.A 11.C 12.B 13.D 14.D 15.A 16.B 17.C 18.C

ELS-WORKSHEETS

UNIT 18

- 18/1 (P.112) 1.industrious 2.enormous 3.incredible 4.impolite 5.trustworthy 6.chief 7.considerate
8.particular 9.strange 10.annoyed 11.elegant 12.abandoned
- 8/2 (P.112) 1-5, 2-8, 3-10, 4-6, 7-12, 9-11
- 8/3 (P.113) 1.shallow 2.hostile 3.revealed 4.boundless 5.natural 6.similar 7.punctual 8.distant
9.blunt 10.shabby 11.reluctant 12.conceited
- 8/4 (P.113) 1.refuse 2.thrifty 3.departure 4.admit 5.improve 6.complex 7.forbid 8.lose 9.spend
10.brave 11.accidental 12.inconsiderate 13.exit 14.generous 15.weak 16.similarity
- 8/5 (P.114) 1.C 2.B 3.C 4.A 5.B 6.D 7.C 8.A 9.B 10.B
- 8/6 (P.115) 1.C 2.B 3.D 4.A 5.D 6.B 7.C 8.B 9.A 10.C
- 8/7 (P.116) in-: 2-3-4-9-13-14-16 im-: 1-7-10-11-15 il-: 8-12 ir-: 5-6
- 8/8 (P.116) un-: 1-4-7-10-12-13-16-18-22 in-: 2-5-6-9-11-19-21 -less: 3-8-14-15-17-20
- 8/9 (P.117) a) un-: 1-2-5-6-8-11 dis-: 3-4-7-9-10-12
b) 1.unpacked 2.dissatisfied 3.disapprove 4.unfasten 5.undress 6.disadvantage 7.unload
8.disappears 9.uncooked 10.undo 11.disqualified 12.disloyal

UNIT 19

- 19/1 (P.119) 1.hanged 2.seen 3.wound 4.arose 5.aroused 6.lying 7.laid 8.grounded 9.fall 10.hung
11.wounded 12.wound 13.raised 14.sat/rose 15.laid 16.felled 17.sawed 18.risen
19.founded 20.grinding 21.bounded 22.set 23.bounded 24.arose
- 19/B (P.120) 1.a)diary b)dairy 2.a)unknown b)infamous 3.a)valueless b)invaluable 4.a)priceless
b)worthless 5.a)unable b)disabled 6.a)invented b)discovered 7.a)Besides b)beside
8.a)genius b)genuine 9.a)stationery b)stationary 10.a)economic b)economical 11.a)affected
b)affect 12.a)advised b)advice

UNIT 20/REVISION TEST

- | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1.A | 2.C | 3.C | 4.B | 5.A | 6.C | 7.A | 8.D | 9.B | 10.D | 11.A | 12.D | 13.B | 14.C | 15.B | 16.A |
| 17.B | 18.D | 19.D | 20.C | 21.D | 22.A | 23.B | 24.B | 25.D | 26.A | 27.D | 28.A | 29.D | 30.C | 31.A | |
| 32.A | 33.C | 34.B | 35.C | 36.B | 37.B | 38.B | 39.C | 40.D | 41.B | 42.A | 43.D | 44.A | 45.C | 46.B | |
| 47.D | 48.C | 49.D | 50.B | 51.A | 52.B | 53.D | 54.B | 55.A | 56.C | 57.D | 58.C | 59.A | 60.C | 61.C | |
| 62.B | 63.D | 64.A | 65.C | 66.C | 67.A | 68.D | 69.B | 70.C | | | | | | | |

BOOK FOUR QUIZ 1

- | | | | | | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1.B | 2.C | 3.D | 4.C | 5.A | 6.C | 7.A | 8.B | 9.B | 10.D |
| 11.B | 12.D | 13.C | 14.B | 15.C | 16.B | 17.D | 18.A | 19.C | 20.A |
| 21.B | 22.D | 23.A | 24.D | 25.C | 26.D | 27.A | 28.C | 29.C | 30.A |
| 31.B | 32.A | 33.D | 34.D | 35.A | 36.B | 37.D | 38.B | 39.C | 40.D |

BOOK FOUR QUIZ 2

- | | | | | | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1.D | 2.B | 3.C | 4.B | 5.C | 6.D | 7.B | 8.D | 9.C | 10.D |
| 11.A | 12.C | 13.D | 14.A | 15.B | 16.B | 17.C | 18.A | 19.B | 20.A |
| 21.C | 22.B | 23.D | 24.B | 25.D | 26.A | 27.C | 28.B | 29.C | 30.D |
| 31.A | 32.B | 33.C | 34.D | 35.B | 36.D | 37.C | 38.D | 39.A | 40.C |

BOOK FOUR QUIZ 3

- | | | | | | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1.D | 2.A | 3.B | 4.D | 5.A | 6.D | 7.C | 8.C | 9.B | 10.A |
| 11.D | 12.B | 13.C | 14.A | 15.D | 16.B | 17.B | 18.C | 19.D | 20.B |
| 21.A | 22.C | 23.D | 24.A | 25.B | 26.C | 27.D | 28.D | 29.A | 30.B |
| 31.D | 32.C | 33.B | 34.C | 35.A | 36.D | 37.B | 38.C | 39.D | 40.A |

BOOK FOUR QUIZ 4

- | | | | | | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1.B | 2.A | 3.C | 4.D | 5.B | 6.C | 7.C | 8.B | 9.A | 10.D |
| 11.C | 12.B | 13.D | 14.D | 15.C | 16.A | 17.B | 18.D | 19.B | 20.A |
| 21.D | 22.C | 23.B | 24.A | 25.D | 26.B | 27.C | 28.D | 29.A | 30.C |
| 31.A | 32.A | 33.B | 34.C | 35.A | 36.D | 37.B | 38.A | 39.C | 40.D |